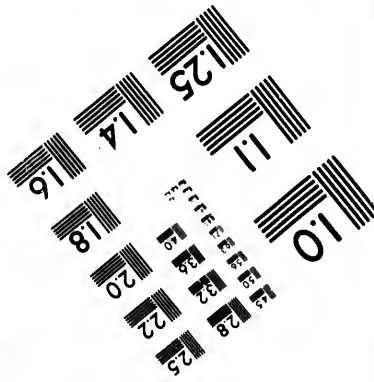


6"



23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**



**© 1984**



# Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- ☐ Coloured covers/  
Couverture de couleur
- ☐ Covers damaged/  
Couverture endommagée
- ☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/  
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- ☐ Cover title missing/  
Le titre de couverture manque
- ☐ Coloured maps/  
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- ☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/  
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- ☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/  
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- ☐ Bound with other material/  
Relié avec d'autres documents
- ☒ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion  
along interior margin/  
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la  
distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- ☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may  
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these  
have been omitted from filming/  
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées  
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,  
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont  
pas été filmées.
- ☐ Additional comments:/  
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- ☐ Coloured pages/  
Pages de couleur
- ☐ Pages damaged/  
Pages endommagées
- ☐ Pages restored and/or laminated/  
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- ☒ Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/  
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- ☐ Pages detached/  
Pages détachées
- ☒ Showthrough/  
Transparence
- ☐ Quality of print varies/  
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- ☐ Includes supplementary material/  
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- ☐ Only edition available/  
Seule édition disponible
- ☐ Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata  
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to  
ensure the best possible image/  
Les pages totalement ou partiellement  
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,  
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à  
obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

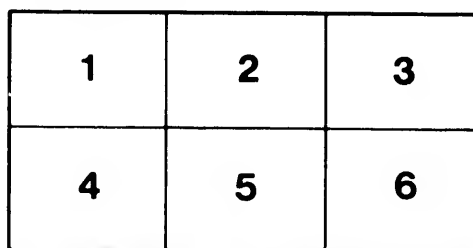
Library Division  
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol —> (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

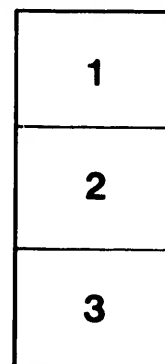
Library Division  
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole —> signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.





**CAPTAIN JAMES COOK, F.R.S.**

A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
P A C I F I C O C E A N ;

*Undertaken by the Command of His Majesty,*  
FOR MAKING DISCOVERIES IN THE NORTHERN  
HEMISPHERE.

PERFORMED UNDER THE DIRECTION OF  
CAPTAINS COOK, CLERKE, & GORE,

In the Years 1776, 7, 8, 9, and 80.

*Compiled from the various Accounts of that Voyage  
hitherto Published.*

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

---

---

VOL. I.

---

---

EDINBURGH:

PRINTED BY ALEX. LAWRIE AND CO.

FOR J. FAIRBAIRN, ADAMS'S SQUARE.

---

---

1805.

NW  
970P  
C771  
3d  
Edin.  
1805  
v.1

OF THE

TO THE

PACIFIC

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE

THE



CONTENTS

OF

VOL. I.

	Page.
Introduction	1
An Account of Captain James Cook	31

BOOK I.

Captains Cook and CLARK appointed to the Resolution and Discovery—Preparations for the Voyage—Occurrences preceding their setting sail—Departure of the Resolution—Proceeds to Teneriffe—Some Account of the Island, Inhabitants, &c.—Junction with the Discovery at the Cape of Good Hope—Passage through Prince Edward's Islands—Arrival at Christmas Harbour—The coast of Kerguelen's Land explored—Arrival at Van Diemen's Land—Interview with the natives—Their Persons, Dress, Behaviour, and Habitations—Arrival at Queen Charlotte's Sound—Intercourse with the Natives—Particulars of the Horrid Massacre of the Adventure's Boat Crew—Curious Remarks on the Inhabitants, Customs, &c.—Departure from New Zealand

## BOOK II.

Page.

Behaviour of the two New-Zealand Youths—The Island of Mungoo with its Inhabitants described—Visit and behaviour of Mourner—Disposition and Manners of the Mungoos—Waseco discovered—Mess Ghee, Barney, and Anderson, with Omai, sent on shore—Account of their reception—Omai's meeting and astonishing adventure with his Countrymen—Remarks concerning Waseco—Departure from it—Otaheite or Waseco-ette visited—Singularity in the natives of Hervey's Island—Submarine Grotto at Palmerston's Island—Arrival at the Friendly Isles—Amiable character of the Natives—Propensity to thieving—Of their persons—Transactions with them—Expedient to prevent their depredations—Opinions of the Islanders of a Volcano—Entertainments exhibited by the English and Natives—Mode of Shaving, &c.—Visit of Pouaho, the King—Pouaho's insipid Viceroi—Offering to deprecate death—Mourning Ceremonies—Sentiments concerning the Soul—Future State—Their Language, &c. &c.

119

## BOOK III.

Island of Toohomai discovered—Arrival at Otaheite—Omai's reception—Otaheite visited by the Spaniards—Their attempts to deprecate the character of the English—Interview with Wahiedoos, the chief of Poulbo—Omai's imprudent conduct—Penalty and censure left on the Island—Captain Cook's arrival—Council of the chiefs—Heevar described—Gifts made to King a present—Manner of preserving the body of a dead chief—Manner of conducting a war—A curious medical operation—Oton's art—Omai's war canoe—Na's power, &c.

123

## INTRODUCTION.

Although Great Britain has long been  
 at the vanguard of the world, and has  
 that which can give to the world, yet it  
 has not been without exertions, and has since far  
 surpassed them, even in their own tract. In the  
 progress of the century, continues some spirited en-  
 terprises, but afterwards  
 the world has been to have totally subdued  
 when, by the command of  
 his late Majesty, a voyage was undertaken, under  
 the direction of Captain Middleton, for discover-  
 ing a north-west passage through Hudson's bay.  
 In 1746, two ships were fitted out, by subscription,  
 for the same purpose, under the command of cap-  
 tains Smith and Moor. But it was reserved for  
 his present Majesty, by that munificence and pa-  
 tronage, which every liberal pursues with fresh  
 him, to open friendly communications with some  
 recesses of the globe, hitherto unexplored. Cap-  
 tain (now Admiral) Byron, with the ships Dol-  
 phin and Tamer, in 1764—5; Wallis and Carteret,  
 with the Dolphin and Swallow, in 1766—7; and  
 Cook, with the Endeavour, in 1768—71, and with  
 the Resolution and Adventure, in 1771—5, carried  
 on a plan of discovery, which it was the purpose  
 of the present voyage to finish.



The intimate connection between these voyages renders it very necessary to state, as shortly as possible, the objects accomplished by the preceding voyages, and how far the intention of the present one has been answered.

In general it may be premised, that the universal object of all the voyages of the present reign was to explore the vast Ocean which extends thro' the whole southern hemisphere; as the result of all the researches which had hitherto been made might be justly considered as obscure traditions, bold fictions, and plausible conjectures; that these five different circumnavigations have answered a better purpose, is visible from the following observations.

Falkland's Islands in the South Atlantic Ocean were barely known to exist before Anson, and so erroneous was even his idea of them, that he considered Pepys Island and Falkland's Isles to be different places; there can be no doubt that they are the same, from Byron and M'Bride's joint testimony; and of them we have as exact charts as of the coasts of Great Britain itself. Besides this, the discovery of Sandwich Islands, the most southerly point yet known, and the certain accounts we have of the isle of Georgia, are all to be attributed to Cook. Sir John Narborough gave us very imperfect accounts of Magalhaen's Straits, but captain Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, have furnished us with very accurate accounts of its coast, harbours, headlands, bays, islands, rides, soundings, and currents, which are a very valuable acquisition, and should deter any future adventurers from steering that course, especially when a much safer entrance

voyages  
as pos-  
ceeding  
present

univer-  
nt reign  
ds thro'  
result of  
n made  
aditions,  
at these  
wered a  
g obser-

c Ocean  
and so  
he con-  
to be dif-  
they are  
nt testi-  
rts as of  
tes this,  
souther-

unts we  
tributed  
very im-  
but cap-  
urnished  
harbours,  
and cur-  
ion, and  
steering  
entrance

may be had to the Pacific Ocean, by doubling Cape Horn; this navigation, captain Cook has clearly shown, is by no means attended with such danger as might be suspected from the hardships and distresses which Anson and Pizarro suffered there; and that wholly owing to the season in which they were obliged to hazard it. But they have not only rendered the access to the Pacific Ocean more easy, but have made us acquainted with a far greater part of its contents. As the Spanish navigators had no further design than to get a passage to the Moluccas and other spice islands, they never steered further westward, by deviating from their track, except accidentally, and if then they fell in with any islands, or made any discoveries, little benefit was derived from them, their accounts being so inaccurate as sometimes to occasion a question if such places existed. Indeed, the vast quantity of territory annexed to the Spanish Crown, and the many rich mines never wrought, rendered new acquisitions by no means to be coveted; so that, except the annual Manilla and Acapulco ship, they seldom attempted to steer across the vast gulph which separates Asia from America.

Other navigators in these seas generally followed the Spanish tract: as indeed their sole business there was either for the purpose of commerce or hostilities with them. It is probable then, that after passing Tierra del Fuego, they would hold a northerly course to the uninhabited island of Juan Fernandez, and thence sail along the American coast from Chili to California, but they would either return to the Atlantic by the same course, or steer the tract of the Philippine galleons, as trade or ra-

pine could be benefited by no other. In later years the enterprising Dutch have made some more certain and effectual researches in the southern latitudes of this ocean. In 1642 Tasman's voyage will ever be remembered, for the discoveries he made in a circuit, reaching from a high southern latitude, so far north as New Guinea. Le Maire and Schouten in 1616, and Roggewein in 1722, crossing the south tropic, traversed this ocean from Cape Horn to the East Indies. But even the discoveries they made can only be considered as a proof how much might be done. If they discovered a coast, they often declined to land; or if they ventured, their inquiries and observations were so futile, as not to satisfy common curiosity, much less philosophical inquiry.

While we thus must allow the Dutch to have been our harbingers, it is also to be observed that we afterwards went beyond them, even in their own tract. And how successfully his Majesty's ships have penetrated into the obscurest recesses of the South Pacific Ocean will appear from a recital of their various and extensive operations, which have adjusted the geography of so considerable a part of the globe.

The several lands, mentioned to have been discovered by preceding navigators, whether Spanish or Dutch, have been diligently sought after; and most of those which appeared to be of any consequence, found out and visited; when every method was put in practice to correct former mistakes, and supply former deficiencies. Thus, of the famous Terra Australia del Espiritu Santo, which was always considered a part of a southern continent, cap-

tain Cook has defined the true position and bounds, in the Archipelago of the New Hebrides.

But besides perfecting the discoveries of their predecessors, our late navigators have added a long catalogue of their own to enrich geographical knowledge. By repeatedly traversing the Pacific Ocean, within the south tropic, a seemingly endless profusion of habitable spots of land was found. Islands interspersed through the amazing space of eighty degrees of longitude, either separately scattered, or grouped in numerous clusters; and such ample accounts have we received, both of them and their inhabitants, that, to make use of the captain's own words, we *have left little more to be done in that part.*

Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, all contributed towards increasing our knowledge of the isles in the Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the southern tropic; but how far that ocean extended to the west, by what lands it was bounded on that side, and the connections of those lands with the former discoveries, remained unknown till captain Cook, after his first voyage, brought back a satisfactory decision to these questions. With wonderful skill and perseverance, amidst perplexities, difficulties, and dangers, he traced this coast almost 2000 miles, from the  $38^{\circ}$  of south latitude, across the tropic, to its northern extremity, within  $10^{\circ}$  and a half of the equinoctial, where it joined the land, already explored by the Dutch, which they have denominated New Holland. Tasman's discoveries in the last century are now completed by captain Cook; and we are fully acquainted with the circumference of



this vast body of land, which is justly computed to be *One Fifth of the Globe*.

Although Tasman was the first discoverer of New-Zealand, yet the small portion of it along which he sailed, rendered his account of it so imperfect, that it was the general opinion of geographers, that New-Zealand was part of a southern continent, running North and South from the  $33^{\circ}$  to the  $64^{\circ}$  of south latitude. Captain Cook having spent six months in this country in 1769 and 1770 has fully explored it, and all its coasts; so that from his accounts, as well as that of other visitors, it is established to be no part of a continent, but containing the largest islands hitherto discovered in the southern hemisphere.

Again, captain Cook has put beyond doubt, that there is no junction between New-Holland and New-Guinea, as he sailed through between them. Though Mr Dalrymple and others had discovered some traces of such a passage, yet the importance of the discovery may be judged of, by reflecting that Mons. Bougainville in 1768, rather than attempt such a passage, sailed ninety leagues about, while reduced to feed upon seal skins from of the yards and riggings, for want of provisions.

For a similar discovery to the preceding, we are indebted to captain Carteret; viz. that the land, named by captain Dampier New-Britain, consists of two large and several smaller islands, through which, by St George's Channel, is a much better and shorter passage, whether from the eastward or westward, than round all the islands and lands to the northward.

Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, were principally employed in exploring the south Atlantic, and knew no more of the south Pacific, than accidentally occurred in the direct tract they held: and as captain Cook's main object in his first voyage was to observe the transit of Venus at Otaheite, his anxiety to be there in proper time prevented his visiting that part of the south Pacific, where the riches and mine of discovery was supposed to exist. To put an end to all conjectures on this matter, captain Cook was sent out with the Resolution and Adventure, in 1772, on the most enlarged plan of discovery hitherto attempted, *viz.* to circumnavigate the globe in high southern latitudes, and carefully to examine every corner of the south Pacific, at once to determine, whether a southern continent existed in any accessible part of the southern hemisphere.

In attending captain Cook in this second voyage, together with his preceding one, we have the greatest certainty to conclude, that many extensive continents and islands, mentioned by former navigators, were either large fields of ice, or existed only in the chimerical heads of the pretended discoverers.

It has been, by many, considered as an unanswerable argument, that a southern continent is necessary to preserve the due equilibrium; but, from the thorough knowledge of the greater part of the southern hemisphere, of which we are now possessed, we may with certainty aver, that the equilibrium of the earth is maintained, although the vast tract of sea sailed through leaves no proportion for an equal quantity of land.

Thus, though some preceding navigators have an-

nexed more land to the known globe, than captain Cook, to him belongs the honour of disclosing the extent of sea covering its surface. To conclude our observations on this subject, we shall make free with his own words: "I had now made the circuit of the southern Ocean in a high latitude, and traversed it in such a manner as to leave not the least room for there being a continent, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. By twice visiting the tropical sea, I had not only settled the situation of some old discoveries, but made there many new ones, and left, I conceive, very little to be done in that part. Thus, I flatter myself, that the intention of the voyage has in every respect been fully answered, the southern hemisphere sufficiently explored, and a final end put to the searching after a southern continent, which has at times engrossed the attention of some of the maritime powers for near two centuries past, and been a favourite theory amongst geographers of all nations."

From the general sketch we have already given of the preceding voyages, it is evident, that though the utmost accessible extremities of the southern hemisphere had been visited, yet our own had not; and it remained a question, how far a northern passage between the Atlantic and Pacific Ocean was practicable, either by sailing westward round North America, or eastward round Asia.

Could such a passage be effected, it would greatly shorten passages to Japan, China, and the East Indies in general. But all the attempts for this purpose proved ineffectual\*.

\* The principal of these attempts were made by—1st Cabot, in 1496, who discovered Newfoundland and the La

Notwithstanding the insuperable bars which these different navigators had experienced, the obtaining a northerly passage was an object so desirable, that it was determined to bring the matter to a certainty, by sending out captain Cook once more, on this important errand, Thus was this valuable commander again called to expose himself to new toils and dangers, *in the service of mankind*, although, after what he had already done, he might have enjoyed himself at home, in ease and plenty, without any imputation of sloth.

The various operations proposed were so new and extensive, that they can be best judged of from the following Instructions, under which he sailed.

---

By the COMMISSIONERS for executing the Office  
of Lord High Admiral of GREAT BRITAIN  
and IRELAND, &c.

*SECRET INSTRUCTIONS for captain James Cook,  
Commander of his Majesty's Sloop the Resolu-  
tion.*

**W**HEREAS the Earl of Sandwich has signi-  
fied to us his Majesty's pleasure, that an  
attempt should be made to find out a northern pas-

bradore coast.—2d Frobisher, in 1576.—3d James and Fox,  
in 1631.—4th Wood, in 1676—5th Middleton, fitted out  
by government, in 1741.—6th Captains Smith and Moore  
by a private society, in 1746.—Lastly, Lord Mulgrave, in  
1773.



sage by sea, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean; and whereas we have, in pursuance thereof, caused his Majesty's sloop, Resolution and Discovery, to be fitted, in all respects, proper to proceed upon a voyage for the purpose above mentioned, and, from the experience we have had of your abilities and good conduct in your late voyages, have thought fit to intrust you with the conduct of the present intended voyage, and with that view appointed you to command the first mentioned sloop, and directed captain Clerke, who commands the other, to follow your orders for his further proceedings: You are hereby required and directed to proceed with the said two sloops directly to the Cape of Good Hope, unless you shall judge it necessary to stop at Madeira, the Cape de Verd, or Canary Islands, to take in wine for the use of their companies; in which case you are at liberty to do so, taking care to remain there no longer than may be necessary for that purpose.

On your arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, you are to refresh the sloops' companies, and to cause the sloops to be supplied with as much provisions and water as they can conveniently stow.

You are, if possible, to leave the Cape of Good Hope by the end of October, or the beginning of November next, and proceed to the southward in search of some islands said to have been lately seen by the French, in the latitude of  $48^{\circ} 0'$  south, and about the meridian of Mauritius. In case you find those islands, you are to examine them thoroughly for a good harbour; and, upon discovering one, make the necessary observations to facilitate the finding it again; as a good port, in that situation, may

hereafter prove useful, although it should afford little or nothing more than shelter, wood, and water. You are not, however, to spend too much time in looking out for those islands, or in the examination of them, if found, but proceed to Otaheite, or the Society Isles (touching at New Zealand in your way thither, if you should judge it necessary and convenient), and taking care to arrive there time enough to admit of your giving the sloop's companies the refreshments they may stand in need of, before you prosecute the further object of these instructions.

Upon your arrival at Otaheite, or the Society Isles, you are to land Omai at such of them as he may choose, and to leave him there.

You are to distribute among the chiefs of those islands such part of the presents with which you have been supplied as you shall judge proper, reserving the remainder to distribute among the natives of the countries you may discover in the northern hemisphere: and having refreshed the people belonging to the sloop under your command, and taken on board such wood and water as they may respectively stand in need of, you are to leave those islands in the beginning of February, or sooner if you shall judge it necessary, and then proceed in as direct a course as you can to the coast of New Aibion, endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of  $45^{\circ}$  or  $50^{\circ}$  north; and taking care, in your way thither, not to lose any time in search of new lands, or to stop at any you may fall in with, unless you find it necessary to recruit your wood and water.

You are also, in your way thither, strictly en-

joined not to touch upon any part of the Spanish dominions on the western continent of America, unless driven thither by some unavoidable accident; in which case you are to stay no longer there than shall be absolutely necessary, and to be very careful not to give any umbrage or offence to any of the inhabitants or subjects of his Catholic Majesty. And if, in your further progress to the northward, as hereafter directed, you find any subjects of any European Prince or State upon any part of the coast you may think proper to visit, you are not to disturb them, or give them any just cause of offence, but on the contrary to treat them with civility and friendship.

Upon your arrival in the coast of New Albion, you are to put into the first convenient port to recruit your wood and water, and procure refreshments, and then to proceed northward along the coast, as far as the latitude of  $65^{\circ}$ , or further, if you are not obstructed by lands or ice; taking care not to lose any time in exploring rivers or inlets, or upon any other account, until you get into the before mentioned latitude of  $65^{\circ}$ , where we could wish you to arrive in the month of June next. When you get that length you are very carefully to search for, and to explore, such rivers or inlets as may appear to be of a considerable extent, and pointing towards Hudson's or Baffin's Bays; and if, from your own observations, or from any information you may receive from the natives (who, there is reason to believe, are the same race of people, and speak the same language, of which you are furnished with a vocabulary, as the Esquimaux) there shall appear to be a certainty, or even a probability, of a water

Spanish  
America,  
accident ;  
ere than  
ery care-  
o any of  
Majesty.  
orthward,  
ts of any  
t of the  
are not to  
se of of-  
ith civili-

v Albion,  
ort to re-  
e refresh-  
along the  
ner, if you  
care not  
ts, or up-  
o the be-  
ould wish

. When  
to search  
s may ap-  
pointing  
if, from  
ation you  
is reason  
nd speak  
shed with  
all appear  
f a water

passage into the afore-mentioned bays, or either of them, you are, in such case, to use your utmost endeavours to pass through with one or both of the sloops, unless you shall be of opinion that the passage may be effected with more certainty, or with greater probability, by smaller vessels ; in which case you are to set up the frames of one or both the small vessels with which you are provided, and, when they are put together, and are properly fitted, stored, and victualled, you are to dispatch one or both of them, under the care of proper officers, with a sufficient number of petty officers, men, and boats, in order to attempt the said passage ; with such instructions for their rejoining you if they should fail, or for their further proceedings, if they should succeed in the attempt, as you shall judge most proper. But, nevertheless, if you shall find it more eligible to pursue any other measures than those above pointed out, in order to make a discovery of the before-mentioned passage (if any such there be), you are at liberty, and we leave it to your discretion, to pursue such measures accordingly.

In case you shall be satisfied that there is no passage through to the above-mentioned bays, sufficient for the purposes of navigation, you are, at the proper season of the year, to repair to the port of St Peter and St Paul in Kamtschatka, or wherever else you shall judge more proper, in order to refresh your people, and pass the winter ; and, in the spring of the ensuing year 1778, to proceed from thence to the northward, as far as, in your prudence, you may think proper, in further search of a northwest passage, from the Pacific Ocean, into the Atlantic Ocean, or the North Sea ; and if



from your own observation, or any information you may receive, there shall appear to be a probability of such a passage, you are to proceed as above directed : and, having discovered such passage, or failed in the attempt, make the best of your way back to England, by such route as you may think best for the improvement of geography and navigation ; repairing to Spithead with both sloops, where they are to remain till further orders.

At whatever places you may touch in the course of your voyage, where accurate observations of the nature hereafter mentioned have not already been made, you are, as far as your time will allow, very carefully to observe the true situation of such places, both in latitude and longitude ; the variation of the needle ; bearings of head-lands ; height, direction, and course of the tides and currents ; depths and soundings of the sea ; shoals, rocks, &c. ; and also to survey, make charts, and take views of such bays, harbours, and different parts of the coast, and to make such notations thereon as may be useful either to navigation or commerce. You are also carefully to observe the nature of the soil, and the produce thereof ; the animals and fowls that inhabit or frequent it ; the fishes that are to be found in the rivers or upon the coast, and in what plenty ; and, in case there are any peculiar to such places, to describe them as minutely, and to make as accurate drawings of them, as you can ; and if you find any metals, minerals, or valuable stones, or any extraneous fossils, you are to bring home specimens of each ; as also of the seeds of such trees, shrubs, plants, fruits, and grains, peculiar to those places, as you may be able to collect, and to transmit them

to our Secretary, that proper examination and experiments may be made of them. You are likewise to observe the genius, temper, disposition, and number of the natives and inhabitants, where you find any; and to endeavour, by all proper means, to cultivate a friendship with them; making them presents of such trinkets as you have on board, and they may like best; inviting them to traffic, and showing them every kind of civility and regard; but taking care, nevertheless, not to suffer yourself to be surprised by them, but to be always on your guard against any accidents.

You are also, with the consent of the natives, to take possession, in the name of the King of Great Britain, of convenient situations in such countries as you may discover, that have not already been discovered or visited by any other European power; and to distribute among the inhabitants such things as will remain as traces and testimonies of your having been there; but if you find the countries so discovered are uninhabited, you are to take possession of them for his Majesty, by setting up proper marks and inscriptions, as first discoverers and possessors.

But forasmuch as, in undertakings of this nature, several emergencies may arise not to be foreseen, and therefore not particularly to be provided for by instructions beforehand; you are, in all such cases, to proceed as you shall judge most advantageous to the service on which you are employed.

You are, by all opportunities, to send to our Secretary, for our information, accounts of your proceedings, and copies of the surveys and drawings you shall have made; and upon your arrival in

England, you are immediately to repair to this office, in order to lay before us a full account of your proceedings in the whole course of your voyage; taking care, before you leave the sloop, to demand from the officers and petty officers, the log-books and journals they may have kept, and to seal them up for our inspection; and enjoining them, and the whole crew, not to divulge where they have been, until they shall have permission so to do: and you are to direct captain Clerke to do the same, with respect to the officers and crew of the Discovery.

If any accident should happen to the Resolution in the course of the voyage, so as to disable her from proceeding any further, you are, in such case, to remove yourself and her crew into the Discovery, and to prosecute your voyage in her; her commander being hereby strictly required to receive you on board, and to obey your orders, the same, in every respect, as when you were actually on board the Resolution: And in case of your inability, by sickness or otherwise, to carry these Instructions into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the best manner he can.

Given under our hands the 6th  
day of July 1776.

SANDWICH.  
C. SPENCER.  
H. PALLISER.

By command of their Lordships,  
PH. STEPHENS.

Government, now heartily in earnest, neglected no step which might tend to promote the object in view. In 1745, a law had passed offering a donation of L. 20,000, to the discoverer of a northern passage *through Hudson's Bay*, in which his Majesty's ships were excluded. This was now extended to any ship belonging to his Majesty, or any of his subjects, and the restriction to Hudson's Bay cancelled, bearing, that the discoverer of a passage by sea, between the Atlantic and Pacific Ocean *in any direction*, or parallel of the northern hemisphere, should be entitled, &c. As also a reward of five thousand pounds, to any ship that should approach to within  $1^{\circ}$  of the North Pole. In the beginning of summer 1776, captain Pickersgill was appointed commander of the armed brig the *Lion*, and ordered to proceed to Davis's Straits, to protect the British fishers; and, in order to facilitate captain Cook's expedition, to proceed up Baffin's Bay, and make such charts and take such views of the several bays, harbours, &c. as might be useful to navigators, and others; and to be careful to return in the fall of the year. Pickersgill failed in executing his commissions, and in March following, Lieutenant Young was appointed to succeed him.

As the object of this voyage is immediately connected with that of captain Cook, we have annexed a summary of his instructions, dated March 13th 1777.

"That as the *Resolution* and *Discovery* had been sent out under the command of capt. Cook, to attempt the discovery of a northern passage, by sea, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean, and to run as far up as the  $65^{\circ}$  of north latitude, and there,



and as far north as he judged it proper, carefully to search for such rivers or inlets as might appear to him pointing towards Baffin's or Hudson's bay, or the north seas; and to attempt a passage by these if possible: so, on the other hand, you are to proceed to Baffin's Bay, and carefully to explore the western shores thereof, and if an inlet or river is discovered seemingly pointing towards the Pacific Ocean, you are to attempt navigating the same; and if not, endeavour to return to England once this year."

But this expedition was of no service; Young was found more calculated to assist in the glory of a victory than explore icy mountains.

On examining these instructions, it may be questioned, why captain Cook was not directed to commence his search, before he arrived at  $65^{\circ}$ ? Why not examine Hudson's Bay, on our side of America? Why was the western sea of John de Fuca in latitude  $47^{\circ}$  and  $48^{\circ}$ ; the Archipelago of St. Lazarus of Admiral de Fonte from  $50^{\circ}$  to  $55^{\circ}$ ; and the rivers and lakes to the northeastward neglected? It may easily be shown, that these pretended discoveries are mere fictions, and that the orders, not to begin his search before the  $65^{\circ}$  of north latitude, was founded upon a thorough knowledge of the coast to the southward of that point.

Captain Middleton, the commander of the expedition in Hudson's Bay, in 1741, and 1742, had entertained a notion of the probability of discovering a passage to the Pacific, and in search of it had proceeded further north than any of his predecessors; but he found it utterly impracticable. Mr Dobbs, however, upon the information of some of

Middleton's officers, ventured to accuse him of misrepresenting facts, and that from his own accounts of an inlet running westward in latitude  $65^{\circ}$  or  $66^{\circ}$  it was evident he had not taken proper pains. To be at a point upon this, he prevailed upon a society of merchants and gentlemen to fit out the Dobbs and California, to investigate this very inlet, having previously got the L. 20,000 premium established.

But this voyage abundantly established captain Middleton's opinion; for the supposed Straits was found to be a fresh-water river. So high had expectation been raised in favour of this supposed passage, that notwithstanding the failure of this expedition, it was still considered as attainable. Two places were mentioned as the most probable, the one Clasterfield or Bowden's inlet, in latitude  $63^{\circ}$  or  $64^{\circ}$ , the other Repulse Bay in latitude  $67^{\circ}$ . This last, the committee directing the enterprise declared to be impracticable, upon the testimony of Mr Ellis, the commander of the Dobbs, and some of his officers; and the former has been fully explored, and traced 170 miles up the country, to a large lake from whence it takes its rise, in two different voyages, by capt. Christopher, in the sloop Churchill, in the years 1761 and 1762.

Besides these sea voyages, the matter is much elucidated by the journey of Mr Hearne, who was sent out by the Hudson's Bay company to travel over land, as far as the *Copper-Mine River*, which had been much spoken of by Mr Dobbs and other favourers of the scheme. He set out in December 1770, from Fort Prince of Wales, on Churchill's River, lat.  $58^{\circ} 50'$  and his transactions are presen-

ved in his written journal. It is much to be wished that this journal were published, as it contains a very dismal account of the wretched situation of the miserable inhabitants of that part of the globe. His general course was to the northwest. In June 1771, when at a place called *Conge Catharwa Chaga*, he determined, by two good observations, that this place is situated  $24^{\circ} 2'$  west longitude of Churchill River, and in  $68^{\circ} 46'$  north latitude. On the 13th of July he reached Copper-Mine River; and, contrary to the idea he had been left to form of it, found it scarcely navigable for a canoe. Without entering particularly into the account Mr Hearne gives of this river, it is sufficient for our purpose to mention, that he found it by no means navigable for the smallest vessels, and impossible to be made so. On our general chart, the particular situation of this river, as well as the country in general, through which Mr Hearne passed, is accurately laid down. In fine, Mr Hearne's travelling 1300 miles before he arrived at the sea, makes it clear, that the continent of North America stretches from Hudson's Bay, at least that distance to the northwest, while his most westerly distance from Hudson's Bay was about 600 miles; and the Indians who attended him as guides were convinced that there existed a vast tract of continent, stretching on in the same direction. What we have now mentioned, being sufficiently known to the first Lord of the Admiralty, was a good reason for his ordering captain Cook to commence his search in latitude  $65^{\circ}$ , and not more to the southward. But if there are any who are still inclined to think it should have begun earlier, we beg leave to recom-

tend to them a perusal of the Spanish voyages, particularly that on the coast of America in 1775, published by Mr Danes Barrington. In the general sketch we have now given of the present and preceding voyages, a pretty distinct idea may be formed of what was intended to be done, and what was really accomplished. The benefits arising from them may be enumerated as follows :

1. All visionary speculators and schemers, such as Buffon, Campbell, and De Broses, will find few votaries to support their airy fanciful dreams of treasures, and paradises in these seas, as captain Cook has sufficiently investigated what is, and what is not to be found there ; so, many impracticable undertakings which would probably have taken place, will be entirely prevented.

2. But unprofitable searches will not only be discouraged, but the distresses and inconveniencies attending the navigation of these seas in a great measure prevented. The exact situation of the different islands are properly laid down, rocky shores, perplexing currents, dangerous shoals and narrow straits accurately described ; besides many other advantages, to enumerate which, it would be necessary to transcribe great part of the journals of our several Commanders. By thus lessening the danger of these voyages, a scene of commerce comes in view, that in a course of years will probably come to such a height as is impossible for us at present to have any conception of ; nay, in our own day, it is highly probable, that some speedy advances will be made to form some commercial establishments in the South Pacific ; at least, if we do not, we have taught the Russians and Spaniards



some important lessons in the skin-trade, and otherwise, which they will not fail to improve.

3. The valuable accessions which human knowledge has made on the continued plan of discovery carried on in the present reign, cannot fail to distinguish Britain, as taking the lead in the most arduous enterprises, for the benefit of mankind. And were no real benefit to accrue to us, either in this or a future age, as mentioned in the preceding article, certainly no greater scope was ever given to the dignified exercise of the powers of the human mind, particularly in the astronomical lines.

4. It is commonly observed, that acquisitions in one science are generally followed by acquisitions in other branches; so here, the discovery of so many new places in the globe presents to our view fresh objects of science. Upon the report of any common sailor much information may be obtained; but when we consider, that in these voyages the labours of some of the most eminent men of the times are united, we must be satisfied that every thing new and valuable, throughout the wide extent of their researches, are collected and recorded. It is necessary here to mention, that in his second voyage, captain Cook was accompanied by Sir Joseph Banks; the obligations which (if we may use the expression) science lies under to this great man, cannot be better expressed than in the words of Mr Wallis, which we beg leave to transcribe.

“That branch of natural knowledge, which may be called *nautical astronomy*, was undoubtedly in its infancy when these voyages were first undertaken. Both instruments and observers, which deserved the name, were very rare; and so late as

and other-  
an know-  
discovery  
fail to dis-  
e most ar-  
ind. And  
er in this  
ceding ar-  
given to  
he human  
nes.

ositions in  
quisitions  
ery of so  
our view  
rt of any  
obtained ;  
yages the  
en of the  
hat every  
de extent  
rded. It  
cond voy-  
ir Joseph  
y use the  
eat man,  
rds of Mr

which may  
dly in its  
dertaken.  
deserved  
late as

the year 1770, it was thought necessary, in the appendix to *Mayer's Tables*, published by the Board of Longitude, to state facts, in contradiction to the assertions of so celebrated an Astronomer as the Abbé de la Caille, that the altitude of the sun at noon, the easiest and most simple of all observations, could not be taken with certainty to a less quantity than five, six, seven, or even eight minutes.\* But those who will give themselves the trouble to look into the *astronomical observations* made in captain Cook's last voyage, will find, that there were few, even of the petty officers, who could not observe the distance of the moon from the sun, or a star, the most delicate of all observations, with sufficient accuracy. It may be added,

\* The Abbé's words are " Si ceux qui promettent une si grande précision dans ces sortes des methodes, avoient navigué quelque temps, ils auroient vu souvent, que dans l'observation la plus simple de toutes, qui est celle de la hauteur du soleil à midi, deux observations, munis de bons quartiers de reflexion, bien rectifiés, different entr'eux, lorsqu'ils observent chacun a part, de 5' 6' 7' & 8'." *Ephemer.* 1755—1765. *Introduction*, p. 32.

It must be however mentioned, in justice to M. de la Caille, that he attempted to introduce the lunar method of discovering the longitude, and proposed a plan of calculations of the moon's distance from the sun and fixed stars; but, through the imperfection of his instruments, his success was much less than that method was capable of affording. The bringing it into general use was reserved for Dr Maskelyne our Astronomer Royal. See the preface to the *Tables for correcting the Effects of Refraction and Parallax*, published by the Board of Longitude, under the direction of Dr Shepherd, Plumian Professor of Astronomy and Experimental Philosophy at Cambridge, in 1772.

that the method of making and computing observations, for finding the variation of the compass, is better known, and more frequently practised by those who have been on these voyages than by most others. Nor is there, perhaps, a person, who ranks as an officer, and has been concerned in them, who would not, whatever his real skill may be, feel ashamed to have it thought that he did not know how to observe for, and compute the time at sea ; though, but a short while before these voyages were set on foot, such a thing was scarcely ever heard of amongst seamen ; and even first-rate astronomers doubted the possibility of doing it with sufficient exactness." \*

\* In addition to Mr Wallis's remark, it may be observed, that the proficiency of our naval officers in taking observations at sea, must ultimately be attributed to the great attention paid to this important object by the Board of Longitude at home : liberal rewards having been given to mathematicians for perfecting the lunar Tables, and facilitating calculations ; and to artists, for constructing more accurate instruments for observing, and watches better adapted to keeping time at sea. It appears, therefore, that the voyages of discovery, and the operations of the Board of Longitude went hand in hand ; and they must be combined, in order to form a just estimate of the extent of the plan carried into execution since his Majesty's accession, for improving astronomy and navigation. But, besides the establishment of the Board of Longitude on its present footing, which has had such important consequences, it must also ever be acknowledged, that his present Majesty has extended his royal patronage to every branch of the liberal arts and useful science. The munificent present to the Royal Society for defraying the expence of observing the Transit of Venus ; — the institution of the Academy of Painting and Sculpture ; — the mag-

"The number of places at which the rise and times of flowing of tides have been observed, in these voyages, is very great; and hence an important article of useful knowledge is afforded. In these observations some very curious and even unexpected circumstances have offered themselves to our consideration. It will be sufficient to instance the exceedingly small height to which the tide rises in the middle of the great Pacific Ocean; where it falls short two thirds at least of what might have been expected from theory and calculation."

"The direction and force of currents at sea make also an important object. These voyages will be found to contain much useful information on this head; as well relating to seas nearer home, and which, in consequence, are navigated every day, as to those which are more remote, but where, notwithstanding, the knowledge of these things may be of great service to those who are destined to navigate them hereafter. To this head also we may refer the great number of experiments which have

inficent apartments allotted to the Royal and Antiquary Societies, and to the Royal Academy, at Somerset Place;—the support of the Garden of Exotics at Kew, to improve which Mr Mason was sent to the extremities of Africa:—the substantial encouragement afforded to learned men and learned works, in various departments, and particularly that afforded to Mr Herschell, which has enabled him to devote himself entirely to the improvement of astronomy; these, and many other instances which might be enumerated, would have greatly distinguished his Majesty's reign, even if he had not been the patron of those successful attempts to perfect geography and navigation by so many voyages of discovery.



been made for inquiring into the depth of the sea, its temperature, and saltness at different depths, and in a variety of places and climates."

"An extensive foundation has also been laid for improvements in magnetism, for discovering the cause and nature of the polarity of the needle, and a theory of its variations by the number and variety of the observations and experiments which have been made both on the variation and dip in almost all parts of the world. Experiments also have been made, in consequence of the late voyages, on the effects of gravity, in different and very distant places, which may serve to increase our stock of natural knowledge. From the same source of information we have learned, that the phænomenon, usually called the *aurora borealis*, is not peculiar to high northern latitudes, but belongs equally to all cold climates, whether they be north or south."

"But perhaps no part of knowledge has been so great a gainer by the late voyages, as that of botany. We are told \* that at least twelve hundred new plants have been added to the known system; and that very considerable additions have been made to every other branch of natural history, by the great skill and industry of Sir Joseph Banks, and the other gentlemen † who have accompanied captain Cook for that purpose."

\* See Dr Shepherd's Preface as above.

† Dr Solander, Dr Forster and his son, and Dr Sparman. Dr Forster has given us a specimen of the botanical discoveries of his voyage in the *Characteres Generum Plantarum*, &c. and much curious philosophical matter is contained in his *Observations made in a Voyage round the World*. Dr Sparman, al-

To captain Cook himself we are indebted for another improvement, which was, the general health of his crew, during his long voyages, and that may be observed particularly in every passage of the preceding volumes. Another good effect of these voyages, and that not the least of them, is the opportunity they have afforded of studying human nature in various situations both interesting and uncommon. However secluded from the rest of mankind any tribe may appear to be at this time, yet if any traces remain of a quondam acquaintance with any sect or race, by history or our own observation, there cannot be seen uncultivated nature. And in this state, the islands contiguous to the continent of Asia seem to be. But our enterprising discoverer had occasion to observe, in the centre of the Pacific Ocean, tribes of fellow creatures hitherto unknown; their manners, customs, religion, laws, their every thing, the production of nature and necessity. What a soil for philosophical inquiry!

On the one hand, our admiration is raised, in observing their songs, their dances, their games, their processions, and on the other our detestation in observing them feed on human flesh.

The Scholar and Antiquarian consider it as a valuable acquisition to discover some relique of Roman or Grecian workmanship; but how much

so, on his return to Sweden, favoured us with a publication, in which he expatiates on the advantages accruing to natural history, to astronomy, geography, general physics, and navigation, from our South Sea voyages.

more is not curiosity awakened, in observing the ingenious inventions of our newly discovered friends in the Sandwich Isles? What rusty collection of antiques can vie with the valuable addition made by Cook to Sir Ashton Lever's repository? And the expence of all his three voyages does not exceed the expence of digging out the buried contents of Herculaneum. In a nation so far advanced in refinement as this, the contrast must be very striking, and to trace the transition from barbarism to civility truly pleasing.

The philosopher will find a new field of discussion opened for him, in what may be termed the natural history of the human species. For example the question concerning the existence of giants is now determined; as upon the joint testimony of Byron, Wallis, and Carteret, we are assured, that the inhabitants of a district bordering on the north side of the straits of Magalhaens, considerably exceed the bulk of mankind in stature.

No subject can be more entertaining than to trace the various migrations of those who first peopled the globe. It was formerly known, that the Asiatic nation, called the Malayans, traded considerably in the Indies, not only on the side of Asia, but also on the African coast, particularly to Madagascar. But we are indebted to captain Cook for the information, that the same nation, who are also called Phœnicians, visited, made settlements, and founded colonies, at different islands and places, at vast distances from one another, and that extending from the east side of Africa to the west side of

Am  
fere  
sure  
C  
port  
the  
ville  
eart  
and  
V  
in o  
with  
whe  
our  
their  
them  
to re  
our  
his  
ried  
pres  
ligh  
and  
with  
be e  
furn  
by  
them  
C  
Eng  
proo  
near  
so m

America, a space, including above half the circumference of the globe; this he demonstrates, by the surest of all proofs, viz. the affinity of language.

Connected with this, we shall mention a very important benefit resulting from these discoveries, viz. the effectual answer we have now to give those cavillers against the Mosaic account of peopling the earth; the vicinity of the two continents of Asia and America is fully established.

When the recesses of the globe are investigated, in order to promote general knowledge, and not with a prospect of enlarging private dominion; when we traverse the globe to visit new tribes of our fellow creatures, as friends, wishing to learn their existence, for the express purpose of bringing them within the pale of the offices of humanity, and to relieve their wants, by communicating to them our superior attainments; the voyages projected by his gracious Majesty George the Third, and carried into execution by captain Cook, have not, it is presumed, been entirely useless. Some rays of light must have been darted on the Friendly, Society, and Sandwich islands, by our repeated intercourse with them. Their stock of ideas must naturally be enlarged, and new materials must have been furnished them for the exercise of their reason by the uncommon objects we exhibited to them.

Convinced, by comparing themselves to their English visitors, of their extreme inferiority, they will probably endeavour to emerge from it, and to rise nearer to a level with those, who left behind them so many proofs of their generosity and humanity.



The useful animals and vegetables introduced amongst them will certainly contribute to the comforts and enjoyments of life.

When Great Britain was first visited by the Phœnicians, the inhabitants were painted savages, much less civilized than those of Tongataboo, or Otaheite; and it is not impossible but that our late voyages may, in process of time, spread the blessings of civilization amongst the numerous islanders of the South Pacific Ocean, and be the means of abolishing their abominable repasts, and almost equally abominable sacrifices.

INCL

Em

JAM  
lan

ton, in

there,

1728.

was a c

able f

chiefly

time in

year 1

years c

Great

Thoma

consid

the na

As 1

tain Co

AN  
ACCOUNT

OF

*CAPTAIN JAMES COOK:*

INCLUDING MANY PARTICULARS NOT MENTIONED  
IN THE LIFE PUBLISHED  
BY AUTHORITY.

*Embellished with an elegant engraving of him,  
copied from the medal struck by the Royal  
Society.*

**JAMES COOK** was born at Marton, in Cleveland, a village about four miles from Great Ayton, in the county of York, and was christened there, as appears from the Parish Register, Nov. 3, 1728. His father, whose name was likewise James, was a day-labourer to Mr Mewburn, a very respectable farmer, and lived in a small cottage, the walls chiefly of mud, as was generally the case at that time in the northern parts of the kingdom. In the year 1730, when our Navigator was about two years old, his father removed with his family to Great Ayton, and was employed as a hind by Thomas Scottowe, Esq. having the charge of a considerable farm in that neighbourhood known by the name of Airyholm.

As the father continued long in that trust, captain Cook was employed in assisting him in various

kinds of husbandry suited to his years, until the age of 13. At that period he was put under the care of Mr Pullen, a school-master who taught at Ayton, where he learned arithmetic, book-keeping, &c. and is said to have shown a very early genius for figures. About January 1745, at the age of 17, his father bound him apprentice to William Saunderson for four years, to learn the grocery and haberdashery business, at Snaith, a populous fishing-town about ten miles from Whitby; but after a year and a half's servitude, having contracted a very strong propensity to the sea (owing probably to the maritime situation of the place, and the great number of ships almost constantly passing and repassing within sight, between London, Shields, and Sunderland), Mr Saunderson was willing to indulge him in following the bent of his inclination, and gave up his indentures. While he continued at Snaith, by Mr Saunderson's account, he discovered much solidity of judgment, and was remarkably quick in accounts. In July 1746, he was bound apprentice to Mr J. Walker of Whitby, for the term of three years, which time he served to his master's full satisfaction. He first sailed on board the ship *Free-love*, burthen about 450 tons, chiefly employed in the coal trade from Newcastle to London. In May, 1748, Mr Walker ordered him home to assist in rigging and fitting for sea a fine new ship, named *The Three Brothers*, about 600 tons burden. This was designed as a favour to him, as it would greatly contribute to his knowledge in his business. In this vessel he sailed from Whitby in the latter end of June. After two coal voyages the ship was taken into the service of Government, and sent as

a trans-  
from t  
another  
over  
ed to  
1749.  
sel wa

In  
as a se  
John  
captain  
in the  
left th  
ing su  
Stock  
the ov  
Early  
and m  
Friend  
tion h  
coal tr  
an offe  
clined  
entere  
of 28  
himself  
Not lo  
ter of  
which  
he got  
ackno  
after,  
cruise  
this M

a transport to Middleburgh, to carry some troops from thence to Dublin. When these were landed, another corps was taken on board, and brought over to Liverpool. From thence the ship proceeded to Deptford, where she was paid off in April 1749. The remaining part of the season the vessel was employed in the Norway trade.

In the spring, 1750, Mr Cook shipped himself as a seaman on board the *Maria*, belonging to Mr John Wilkinson of Whitby, under the command of captain Gaskin. In her he continued all the year in the Baltic trade. Mr Walker is of opinion he left this ship in the winter, and sailed the following summer, viz. 1751, in a vessel belonging to Stockton; but neither the ship's name, nor that of the owner, is now remembered by Mr Walker. Early in February 1752, Mr Walker sent for him and made him mate of one of his vessels, called *The Friendship*, of about 400 tons burthen. In this station he continued till May or June 1753, in the coal trade. At that period Mr Walker made him an offer to go commander of that ship; but he declined it; he soon after left her at London, and entered on board his Majesty's ship *Eagle*, a frigate of 28 or 30 guns, "having a mind," as he expressed himself to his master, "to try his fortune that way." Not long after he applied to Mr Walker for a letter of recommendation to the captain of the frigate, which was readily granted. On the receipt of this he got some small preferment, which he gratefully acknowledged, and ever remembered. Some time after, the *Eagle* sailed with another frigate on a cruize, in which they were very successful. After this Mr Walker heard no more of Mr Cook, until



August 1758, when he received from him a letter, dated Pembroke, before Louisburgh, July 30, 1758, in which he gave a distinct account of our success in that expedition, but does not say what station he then filled.

He received a commission as lieutenant, on the first day of April 1760;—and soon after gave a specimen of those abilities which recommended him to the commands which he executed so highly to his credit, that his name will go down to posterity as one of the most skilful navigators which this country hath produced.

In the year 1765, he was with Sir William Burnaby on the Jamaica station; and that officer having occasion to send dispatches to the Governor of Yucatan, relative to the Logwood-cutters in the bay of Honduras, lieutenant Cook was selected for that employment; and he performed it in a manner which entitled him to the approbation of the admiral. A relation of this voyage and journey was published in the year 1769, under the title of "Remarks on a passage from the river Balise in the bay of Honduras to Merida, the capital of the province of Yucatan in the Spanish West-Indies, by lieutenant Cook," in an 8vo pamphlet.

To a perfect knowledge of all the duties belonging to a sea-life, Mr Cook had added a great skill in astronomy. In the year 1767, the Royal society resolved, that it would be proper to send persons into some part of the South Seas, to observe the transit of the planet Venus over the Sun's disk; and by a memorial delivered to his Majesty they recommended the islands of Marquesas de Mendoza, or those of Rotterdam or Amsterdam, as the pro-

perest  
tion.

return  
coal-tr  
of her  
vessel  
from  
place  
than  
ety.

naviga  
Mr C

On

to be

25th

penda

he sail

voyag

since

of Oct

13th

transit

the isl

after v

which

Zealan

ed at

the cr

pairs

unheal

time

and m

which

On th

perest place then known for making such observation. To this memorial a favourable answer was returned, and the Endeavour, a ship built for the coal-trade, was put in commission, and the command of her given to lieutenant Cook. But before the vessel was ready to sail, captain Wallis returned from his voyage, and pointed out Otaheite as a place more proper for the purpose of the expedition than either of those mentioned by the Royal Society. This alteration was approved of, and our navigator was appointed by that learned body, with Mr Charles Green, to observe the transit.

On this occasion lieutenant Cook was promoted to be captain, and his commission bore date the 25th of May 1768. He immediately hoisted the pendant, and took command of the ship, in which he sailed down the river on the 30th of July. In this voyage he was accompanied by Joseph Banks, Esq. since Sir Joseph, and Dr Solander. On the 13th of October he arrived at Rio de Janeiro, and on the 13th of April 1769, came to Otaheite, where the transit of Venus was observed in different parts of the island. He staid there until the 13th of July, after which he went in search of several islands, which he discovered. He then proceeded to New Zealand, and on the 10th of October, 1770, arrived at Batavia, with a vessel almost worn out, and the crew much fatigued, and very sickly. The repairs of the ship obliged him to continue at this unhealthy place until the 27 of December, in which time he lost many of his seamen and passengers, and more in the passage to the Cape of Good Hope, which place he reached on the 15th of March, 1771. On the 14th of April he left the Cape, and on the

1st of May anchored at St Helena, from whence he sailed on the 4th, and came to anchor in the Downs on the 12th of June, after having been absent almost three years, and in that time had experienced every danger to which a voyage of such a length is incident, and in which he made discoveries equal to those of all the navigators of this country, from the time of Columbus to the present. The narrative of this expedition was written by Dr Hawkesworth, which, as the facts contained in it have not been denied, nor the excellence of the composition disputed, has certainly been treated with a degree of severity, which, when every thing is considered, must excite the astonishment of every reader of taste and sensibility.

Soon after captain Cook's return to England, it was resolved to equip two ships to complete the discovery of the southern hemisphere. It had long been a prevailing idea, that the unexplored part contained another continent, and a \* gentleman, whose enterprising spirit has not met with the encouragement he deserved, had been very firmly persuaded of its existence. To ascertain the fact was the principal object of this expedition; and that nothing might be omitted that could tend to facilitate the enterprise, two ships were provided, furnished with every necessary which could promote the success of the undertaking. The first of these ships was called the Resolution, under the command of captain Cook; the other, the Adventure, commanded by captain Furneaux. Both of them sail-

Alexander Dalrymple, Esq.

ed from  
arrive  
Octob  
of No  
Janua  
the co  
the de  
ice fr  
south  
Seas,  
ed to  
1774,  
Jul  
(  
but on  
althou  
mates  
pany  
The  
public  
Forste  
by Go  
of mak  
as mig  
That  
been a  
the lit  
who w

\* Th  
Pattern  
began s  
tive sym  
must ha

† M  
VO

ed from Deptford on the 9th of April, 1772, and arrived at the Cape of Good Hope on the 30th of October. They departed from thence on the 22d of November, and from that time until the 17th of January, 1773, continued endeavouring to discover the continent, when they were obliged to relinquish the design, observing the whole sea covered with ice from the direction of southeast, round by the south to west. They then proceeded into the South Seas, and made many other discoveries, and returned to the Cape of Good Hope on the 21st of March, 1774, and from thence to England, on the 14th of July, having, during three years and eighteen days (in which time the voyage was performed), lost but one \* man, by sickness, in captain Cook's ship; although he had navigated throughout all the climates from 52° north, to 71° south, with a company of an hundred and eighteen men.

The relation of this voyage was given to the public by captain Cook himself, and by Mr. George Forster, son of Dr Forster, who had been appointed by Government to accompany him for the purpose of making observations on such natural productions as might be found in the course of the navigation. That published by captain Cook has generally been ascribed to a gentleman of great eminence in the literary world; but if the testimony of one † who was on board the ship, and who made an extract

\* This was a consumption terminating in a dropsy. Mr. Pattern, Surgeon of the Resolution, observed that this man began so early to complain of a cough and other consumptive symptoms, which had never left him, that his lungs must have been affected before he came on board.

† Mr Hodges.



from the Journal in its rude uncorrected state, may be relied on, there seems no reason to ascribe the merit of the work to any other person than he whose name it goes under.

The want of success which attended captain Cook's attempt to discover a southern continent, did not discourage another plan being resolved on, which had been recommended some time before. This was no other than finding out a northwest passage, which the fancy of some chimerical projectors had conceived to be a practicable scheme. The dangers which a navigator had twice braved and escaped from, would have exempted him from being solicited a third time to venture his person in unknown countries, amongst desert islands, inhospitable climates, and in the midst of savages; but, on his opinion being asked concerning the person who would be the most proper to execute this design, he once more relinquished the quiet and comforts of domestic life, to engage in scenes of turbulence and confusion, of difficulty and danger. His intrepid spirit and inquisitive mind induced him again to offer his services; and they were accepted without hesitation. The manner in which he had deported himself on former occasions left no room to suppose a fitter man could be selected. He prepared for his departure with the utmost alacrity, and actually sailed in the month of July 1776.

A few months after his departure from England, notwithstanding he was then absent, the Royal Society voted him Sir Godfrey Copley's Gold Medal, as a reward for the account which he transmitted to that body, of the method taken to preserve the health of the crew of his ship; and Sir John Prin-

gle,  
vemb  
must  
tensiv  
not on  
coasts  
austr  
bitabl  
in the  
ple a  
ford,  
Socie  
mann  
After  
to pre  
discou  
tleme  
name  
will  
that  
more  
of th  
creed  
single  
who,  
your  
now,  
her in  
dang  
to th  
count  
It  
flect,  
ou

gle, in an oration pronounced on the 30th of November, observed "how meritorious that person must appear, who had not only made the most extensive, but the most instructive voyages; who had not only discovered, but surveyed vast tracts of new coasts; who had dispelled the illusion of a *terra australis incognita*, and fixed the bounds of the habitable earth, as well as those of the navigable ocean in the southern hemisphere; but that, however ample a field for praise these circumstances would afford, it was a nobler motive that had prompted the Society to notice captain Cook in the honourable manner which had occasioned his then address."

After descanting on the means used on the voyage to preserve the lives of the sailors, he concluded his discourse in these terms. "Allow me then, Gentlemen, to deliver this Medal, with his unperishing name engraven upon it, into the hands of one who will be happy to receive that trust, and to hear that this respectable body never more cordially, nor more meritoriously, bestowed that faithful symbol of their esteem and affection. For if Rome decreed the *Civic Crown* to him who saved the life of a single citizen, what wreaths are due to that man, who, having himself saved many, perpetuates in your Transactions the means by which Britain may now, on the most distant voyages, save numbers of her intrepid sons, her Mariners; who, braving every danger, have so liberally contributed to the fame, to the opulence, and to the maritime empire of their country?"

It will give pain to every sensible mind to reflect, that this honourable testimony to the merit of our gallant commander never came to his know-

ledge. While his friends were waiting with the most earnest solicitude for tidings concerning him, and the whole nation expressed an anxious impatience to be informed of his success, advice was received from captain Clerke\*, in a letter dated at Kamtschatka, the 8th day of June 1779; advising that captain Cook was killed on the 14th of February 1779.

Captain Cook was a married man, and left several children behind him. On each of these his Majesty has settled a pension of 25l. per annum, and 200l. per annum on his widow. It is remarkable, if true as reported, that captain Cook was godfather to his wife; and at the very time she was christened, declared that he had determined on the union which afterwards took place between them.

\* Captain Clerke went a midshipman with Captain Cook in his first voyage, and was appointed by him a lieutenant on the death of Mr Hicks, who died about three weeks before the ship arrived in England.

THE

HI  
very  
the r  
Sava  
ruary  
disco  
round

H  
cation  
taking  
quali  
C  
term  
sever  
mitt  
and  
wan  
self,  
N

TO THE MEMORY OF  
**CAPTAIN JAMES COOK,**

THE ABLEST AND MOST RENOWNED NAVIGATOR  
THIS OR ANY OTHER COUNTRY  
EVER PRODUCED.

HE raised himself, solely by his merit, from a very obscure birth, to the rank of Post-Captain in the royal navy, and was unfortunately killed by the Savages of the island Owhyhee on the 14th of February 1779; which island he had not long before discovered, when prosecuting his third voyage round the globe.

He possessed, in an eminent degree, all the qualifications requisite for his profession and great undertakings; together with the amiable and worthy qualities of the best men.

Cool and deliberate in judging: sagacious in determining: active in executing: steady and persevering, in enterprising from vigilance and unremitting caution: unsubdued by labour, difficulties and disappointments: fertile in expedients: never wanting presence of mind: always possessing himself, and the full use of a sound understanding.

Mild, just, but exact in discipline: he was a fa-



ther to his people, who were attached to him from affection, and obedient from confidence.

His knowledge, his experience, his sagacity, rendered him so entirely master of his subject, that the greatest obstacles were surmounted, and the most dangerous navigations became easy, and almost safe, under his direction.

He explored the southern hemisphere to a much higher latitude than had ever been reached, and with fewer accidents than frequently befal those who navigate the coasts of this island.

By his benevolent and unabating attention to the welfare of his ship's company he discovered and introduced a system for the preservation of the health of seamen in long voyages, which has proved wonderfully efficacious: for in his second voyage round the world, which continued upwards of three years, he lost only one man by distemper, of one hundred and eighteen, of which his company consisted.

The death of this eminent and valuable man was a loss to mankind in general; and particularly to be deplored by every nation that respects useful accomplishments, that honours science, and loves the benevolent and amiable affections of the heart. It is still more to be deplored by this country, which may justly boast of having produced a man hitherto unequalled for nautical talents; and that sorrow is further aggravated by the reflection, that his country was deprived of this ornament by the enmity of a people, from whom, indeed, it might have been dreaded, but from whom it was not deserved. For, actuated always by the most attentive care and tender compassion for the savages in general, this

excel  
by k  
cour  
tread  
zard  
reser  
T  
ascen  
to p  
east  
T  
mula  
skill  
have  
the  
the  
at th  
sum  
laws  
now  
Gre  
the  
with  
doe  
ty p  
Job  
I  
ord  
they  
bef  
lan  
con  
as  
pro

from  
ren-  
t the  
most  
safe,  
much  
and  
hose  
to the  
and  
the  
pro-  
yage  
three  
one  
con-  
was  
y to  
lac-  
s the  
It  
hich  
ther-  
sor-  
t his  
e en-  
have  
ved.  
e and  
this

excellent man was ever assiduously endeavouring by kind treatment, to dissipate their fears, and court their friendship; overlooking their thefts and treacheries, and frequently interposing, at the hazard of his life, to protect them from the sudden resentment of his own injured people.

The object of his last mission was to discover and ascertain the boundaries of Asia and America, and to penetrate into the Northern Ocean by the north-east cape of Asia.

Traveller! contemplate, admire, revere, and emulate this great master in his profession; whose skill and labours have enlarged natural philosophy; have extended nautical science; and have disclosed the long concealed and admirable arrangements of the Almighty in the formation of this globe; and, at the same time, the arrogance of mortals, in presuming to account, by their speculations, for the laws by which he was pleased to create it. It is now discovered beyond all doubt, that the same Great being who created the universe by his *fiat*, by the same ordained our earth to keep a just poise, without a corresponding southern continent—and it does so! ‘He stretches out the North over the empty place, and hangeth the earth upon nothing.’ Job. xxvi. 7.

If the arduous but exact researches of this extraordinary man have not discovered a new world, they have discovered seas, un navigated and unknown before. They have made us acquainted with islands, people, and productions, of which we had no conception. And if he has not been so fortunate as Americus to give his name to a continent, his pretensions to such a distinction remain unrivalled;

and he will be revered, while there remains a page of his own modest account of his voyages, and as long as mariners and geographers shall be instructed by his new map of the Southern Hemisphere, to trace the various courses and discoveries he has made.

If public services merit public acknowledgments; if the man who adorned and raised the fame of his country is deserving of honours, then Captain COOK deserves to have a monument raised to his memory, by a generous and grateful nation:

*Virtutis uberrimum alimentum est bonos.*

VAL. MAXIMUS, Lib. ii, Cap. 6.

Capta  
Dis  
pre  
—  
hal  
of  
—  
La  
vie  
an  
Int  
M  
ma  
No

C  
lutio  
com

A  
VOYAGE  
TO THE  
PACIFIC OCEAN.

---

BOOK I.

CONTENTS.

Captains COOK and CLERKE appointed to the Resolution and Discovery—Preparations for the Voyage—Occurrences preceding their setting sail—Departure of the Resolution—Proceeds to Teneriffe—Some Account of the Island, Inhabitants, &c.—Junction with the Discovery at the Cape of Good Hope—Passage through Prince Edward's Islands—Arrival at Christmas Harbour—The coast of Kerguelen's Land explored—Arrival at Van Diemen's Land—Interview with the natives—Their Persons, Dress, Behaviour, and Habitations—Arrival at Queen Charlotte's Sound—Intercourse with the Natives—Particulars of the Horrid Massacre of the Adventure's Boat Crew—Curious Remarks on the Inhabitants, Country, &c.—Departure from New-Zealand.

ON the 10th of February 1776, captain Cook went on board his Majesty's sloop the Resolution, and hoisted the pendant, having received a commission to command her the preceding day.



The Discovery, of three hundred tons, was, at the same time, prepared for the service, and captain Clerke appointed to the command of her. It may be necessary to observe, that captain Clerke had been captain Cook's second Lieutenant on board the Resolution, in his second voyage round the world.

These two ships were then equipping in the dock at Deptford, for a voyage to make farther discoveries in the Pacific Ocean, under the direction of captain Cook.

The Resolution was hauled into the river on the 9th of March to complete her rigging, and take in stores and provisions for the voyage: Both ships, indeed, were abundantly supplied with every thing requisite for a voyage of such duration. We sailed on the 29th of May, and arrived the next day at Long Reach, where our powder and shot, and other ordnance stores, were received.

On the 8th of June, while we lay in Long Reach, we had the satisfaction of a visit from the Earl of Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the Board of Admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and to the convenience of those who were to embark. They honoured captain Cook with their company to dinner on that day; and were saluted on their coming on board, and on their going ashore with seventeen guns and three cheers.

To convey some permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other islands which we might happen to visit, his Majesty commanded some useful animals to be taken out. On the 10th

we to  
and s  
port.  
quan  
which  
veget  
island

Bo  
rality  
ment  
ly co  
of suc  
respe  
that  
venie  
"J"

eq  
lity;  
day,  
ment  
capta  
they  
fesse  
their  
had o  
perfo  
dal,  
time-  
cal a  
Disc  
ligen  
emba  
M

we took on board a bull, two cows with their calves, and some sheep; with hay and corn for their support. We were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of our valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh supplies of food to the vegetable productions of our newly discovered islands.

Both the ships, by order of the board of Admiralty, were amply supplied with an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as we might discover. With respect to our own wants, nothing was refused us that might be conducive to health, comfort, or convenience.

Those at the head of the naval department were equally solicitous to render our voyage of public utility; accordingly we received on board, the next day, variety of astronomical and nautical instruments, which the Board of Longitude intrusted to captain Cook and Mr King, his second Lieutenant; they having engaged to supply the place of a professed observator. The Board, likewise, put into their possession the time-keeper, which captain Cook had carried out in his last voyage, and which had performed so well. It was constructed by Mr Kendal, and was a copy of Mr Harrison's. Another time-keeper, and the same assortment of astronomical and other instruments, were put on board the Discovery, for the use of Mr William Bailey, a diligent and skilful observator, who was engaged to embark with captain Clerke.

Mr Anderson, Surgeon to captain Cook, added

to his professional abilities a great proficiency in natural history. He had already visited the South-Sea Islands in the same ship, and enabled the captain to enrich his relation of the preceding voyage with remarks of use and value.

Tho' several young men, among the sea-officers, were capable of being employed in constructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coast and head-lands, Mr Webber was engaged to embark with captain Cook, for the purpose of supplying the defects of written accounts, by taking accurate and masterly drawings of the most memorable scenes of our transactions.

The necessary preparations being completed, captain Cook received orders to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the Discovery under his command. In consequence of which, he ordered captain Clerke to carry his ship also round to Plymouth.

The Resolution, with the Discovery in company, sailed from Long Reach on the 15th of June, and anchored at the Nore the same evening. The Discovery proceeded the next day in obedience to captain Cook's order, and the Resolution remained at the Nore till captain Cook, who was then in London, should join her.

It being our intention to touch at Otaheite and the Society Islands, it had been determined to carry Omai back to his native country: accordingly captain Cook and he set out from London early on the 24th, and reached Chatham between ten and eleven o'clock, where they dined with commissioner Proby, who afterwards ordered his yacht to convey them to Sheerness, where the captain's

boat was waiting to take them on board the Resolution.

Though Omai left London with some degree of regret, when he reflected upon the favours and indulgences he had received, yet when mention was made of his own islands, his eyes sparkled with joy. He entertained the highest ideas of this country and its inhabitants; but the pleasing prospect of returning home, loaded with what would be deemed invaluable treasures there, and of obtaining a distinguished superiority among his countrymen, operated so far as to suppress every uneasy sensation; and when he got on board the ship, he appeared to be quite happy.

Omai was furnished, by his Majesty, with quantities of every article that were supposed to be in estimation at Otaheite. He also received several presents from Lord Sandwich, Mr Banks, and many others. Every method had indeed been employed during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the instrument of conveying to his countrymen, an exalted opinion of British greatness and generosity.

About noon on the 25th we weighed anchor, and made sail for the Downs, with a gentle breeze at northwest by west. At nine the same day we anchored, with the North Foreland bearing south by east, and Margate Point southwest by south.

On the 26th, at two o'clock we weighed, and stood round the Foreland; and at eight o'clock the same morning anchored in the Downs. Here captain Cook received two boats on board, which had been built for him at Deal; and the next day, at



two o'clock in the afternoon, we got under sail, but the breeze soon died away and we anchored again. At ten o'clock the same night we weighed again, and proceeded down the channel.

We anchored at Plymouth Sound on the 30th, at three o'clock in the afternoon. The Discovery had arrived there three days before. We saluted Admiral Amherst, whose flag was flying on board the Ocean, and he returned the compliment.

We were employed on the 1st and 2d of July in replacing the water and provisions we had expended, and in receiving on board a supply of port wine. On the 8th captain Cook received his instructions for the voyage, and an order to proceed to the Cape of Good Hope with the Resolution; with directions also to leave an order for captain Clerke to follow him, as soon as he should join his ship, he being at that time in London.

The officers and men on board the Resolution (including marines) were one hundred and twelve, and those on board the Discovery were eighty.

On the 10th of July the proper persons came on board, and paid the officers and crew up to the 30th of last month. The petty officers and seamen received also two months wages in advance. Such indulgence to the latter is customary; but the payment of what was due to the superior officers, was, in consideration of our peculiar situation, to enable us to defray the expence of furnishing ourselves with necessaries for a voyage of such uncommon duration.

In the morning of the 11th, captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr Burney, First Lieute-

nant o  
ders;  
mandi  
to be  
the af  
out be  
we we  
eight  
and st  
northv

Soo  
wind c  
oblige  
not off  
ing.

On  
nes, on  
distant  
and r

On  
in the  
tacked  
beheld  
to be  
the m  
league

We  
on the  
terre,  
Cook  
supply  
animal  
for ou  
July, a

nant of the *Discovery*, captain Clerke's sailing orders; a copy of which he also left with the commanding officer of his Majesty's ships at Plymouth, to be delivered to the captain on his arrival. In the afternoon we weighed with the ebb, and got out beyond all the shipping in the sound, where we were detained most of the following day. At eight o'clock in the evening, we weighed again and stood out of the Sound, with a gentle breeze at northwest by west.

Soon after we came out of Plymouth Sound, the wind came more westerly, and blew fresh, which obliged us to ply down the channel; and we were not off the *Lizard* till the 14th at eight in the evening.

On the 16th at noon, the light-house of *St Agnes*, on the isles of *Scilly*, bore northwest by west, distant about seven or eight miles; and on the 17th and 18th, we were off *Ushant*.

On the 19th we stood westward till eight o'clock in the morning, when the wind shifted, and we tacked and stretched to the southward: here we beheld nine sail of large ships, which we supposed to be French men of war. On the 22d, at ten in the morning, we saw *Cape Ortegal* about four leagues distant.

We had calm weather on the 22d and 23d, and on the afternoon of the 24th, we passed *Cape Finisterre*, with a fine gale at north northeast. Captain Cook determined to touch at *Teneriffe*, to get a supply of hay and corn for the subsistence of his animals on board, as well as the usual refreshments for ourselves. We saw *Teneriffe* on the 31st of July, at four in the afternoon; and at day-light on

the first of August, we sailed round the east point of that island, and anchored on the south side, in the road of Santa Cruz, about eight o'clock, in 23 fathoms water.

There were riding in this road, a French frigate, two French brigantines, an English brigantine, and fourteen sail of Spanish ships.

Immediately after we had anchored, we received a visit from the master of the port, who asked the ship's name. Upon his retiring, captain Cook sent an officer ashore, to present his respects to the Governor, and ask his permission to take in water, and to purchase such articles as were thought necessary. The Governor very politely complied with captain Cook's request, and sent an officer on board to compliment him on his arrival. In the afternoon captain Cook waited upon him, accompanied by some of his officers; and before he returned to his ship, bespoke some corn and straw, ordered a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a supply of water.

The road of Santa Cruz is situate on the south-east side of the island, before the town of the same name. It is said to be the principal road of Teneriffe for shelter, capacity, and the goodness of its bottom. The water to supply the shipping, and for the use of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As these troughs were at this time repairing, fresh water was extremely scarce.

From the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, it might naturally be concluded that Tene-

riffe is  
from  
ly pro  
but a  
is the  
at abo  
howe  
hogs,  
sonab  
plenty  
lons,  
son.  
grow

Ind  
sold a  
shel  
cheap  
ly sup  
engag  
Barb  
derate

Te  
Made  
long  
ly sup  
their  
ties,  
poun  
was  
sum.

Be  
grad  
tinue  
brate

riffe is a barren spot ; we were convinced, however, from the ample supplies we received, that it not only produced sufficient to supply its own inhabitants but also enough to spare for visitors. Though wine is the chief produce of this island, beef may be had at about threepence sterling a pound ; the oxen, however, are small, lean, and bonéy. Sheep, goats, hogs, and poultry, may be had on terms equally reasonable. A great variety of fruits are to be had in plenty, as pears, figs, grapes, mulberries, musk melons, &c. besides others that were not then in season. The pumkins, potatoes, and onions which grow here, are excellent.

Indian corn is produced on this island, and is sold at about three shillings and sixpence per bushel : the fruits and vegetables are, in general, very cheap. Though the inhabitants are but indifferently supplied with fish by the adjoining seas, they are engaged in a considerable fishery on the coast of Barbary, and the produce of it sells at a very moderate price.

Teneriffe is certainly a more eligible place than Madeira, for ships to touch at which are bound on long voyages ; but the wine of the latter is infinitely superior to that of the former : the difference of their prices is almost as considerable as their qualities, for the best Teneriffe wine was sold for twelve pounds a pipe, whereas a pipe of the best Madeira was worth considerably more than double that sum.

Behind the town of Santa Cruz, the country rises gradually to a moderate height ; afterwards it continues to rise southwest-ward towards the celebrated pic of Teneriffe. But we were much disap-



pointed in our expectations with respect to its appearance.

The island, eastward of Santa Cruz, appears perfectly barren. Ridges of high hills run towards the sea, between which are deep vallies, terminating at mountains that run across and are higher than the former.

On the 1st of August in the afternoon, Mr Anderson, (Captain Cook's surgeon) went on shore to one of these vallies, intending to reach the top of the remoter hills, but time would not permit him to get farther than their foot. The lower hills produce great quantities of the *euphorbia canariensis*. The people on the spot imagine its juice to be so caustic as to erode the skin; but Mr Anderson convinced them to the contrary, by thrusting his finger into a plant full of it. The inhabitants dry the bushes of the *euphorbia*, and carry them home for fuel. Santa Cruz, though not large, is a well built city. Their churches have not a magnificent appearance without, but they are decent and tolerably handsome within. Almost facing the stone pier, which runs into the sea from the town, is a marble column, lately erected, enriched with human figures which reflect honour on the statuary.

On the 2d of August, in the afternoon, Mr Anderson and three others hired mules to ride to the

\* In Sparto's History of the Royal Society, page 200. &c. is an account of a journey to the top of the pic of Teneriffe. A modern traveller, viz. the Chevalier de Borda, who measured the height of this mountain in August 1776, makes it 12340 English feet.

city  
from  
five  
not  
very  
the  
nific  
hous  
regu  
much  
T  
steep  
fig-t  
not  
bein  
else  
aloe  
T  
form  
for  
emp  
seen  
sea-  
bird  
cust  
M  
ack  
here  
by  
and  
qua  
vea  
isla  
all

city of Laguna, about the distance of four miles from Santa Cruz. They arrived there between five and six in the evening, but the sight of it did not reward us for our trouble, as the roads were very bad, and our cattle but indifferent. Though the place is extensive, it hardly deserves to be dignified with the name of a city. There are some good houses, but the disposition of the streets is very irregular. Laguna is larger than Santa Cruz, but much inferior to it in appearance.

The road from Santa Cruz to Laguna, runs up a steep barren hill; but, lower down, we saw some fig-trees and corn-fields. The corn, however, is not produced here without great labour, the ground being greatly encumbered with stones. Nothing else presented itself, deserving notice, except a few aloe plants in flower on the side of the road.

The laborious work in this island is chiefly performed by mules, horses being scarce, and reserved for the use of the officers. Oxen are also much employed here. Some hawks and parrots were seen, which were natives of the island; as also the sea-swallow, sea-gulls, partridges, swallows, canary-birds, and black-birds. There are also lizards, locusts, and three or four sorts of dragon-flies.

Mr Anderson was informed, by a gentleman of acknowledged veracity, that a shrub is common here, agreeing exactly with the description given by Linnæus of the tea-shrub, as growing in China and Japan. It is considered as a weed, and large quantities are rooted out of the vineyards every year. The Spaniards, however, who inhabit the island, sometimes make use of it, and ascribe to it all the qualities of the tea imported from China.

The same gentleman mentioned to Mr Anderson another botanical curiosity, which is called the *impregnated lemon*. It is a distinct and perfect lemon inclosed within another.

A certain sort of grape growing here, is deemed an excellent remedy in phthysical complaints. The air and climate are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to afford relief in such complaints. By residing at different heights in the island, it is in the power of any one to procure such a temperature of air as may be best suited to his constitution. He may continue where it is mild and salubrious, or he may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. No person, it is said, can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the pic, after the month of August. Smoke continually issues from near the top of the pic, but they have had no earthquake or eruption since 1704, when the port of Garrachica was destroyed, being filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it; and houses are now built where ships formerly lay at anchor.

The trade of Teneriffe is very considerable, forty thousand pipes of wine being annually made there; which is consumed in the island, or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West-Indies. Indeed the wine is the only considerable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe, unless we reckon the large quantities of filtering stones brought from Grand Canary.

The race of inhabitants found here when the Spaniards discovered the Canaries, are no longer a distinct people, having intermarried with the Spanish settlers; their descendants, however, may be

know  
and I  
wom  
Tene  
that  
coun  
nion  
Span  
was  
did n  
and  
coun  
H  
we w  
Tene  
O  
saw  
about  
much  
taken  
the  
of th  
and  
was  
tain  
have  
lesse  
H  
Bon  
look  
Coo  
ther  
of  
foun

known, from their being remarkably tall, strong, and large-boned. The men are tawny, and the women are pale. The inhabitants, in general, of Teneriffe, are decent, grave, and civil; retaining that solemn cast which distinguishes those of their country from others. Though we are not of opinion that our manners are similar to those of the Spaniards, yet Omai declared, he did not think there was much difference. He said, indeed, that they did not appear to be so friendly as the English; and that their persons nearly resembled those of his countrymen.

Having got our water and other articles on board, we weighed anchor on the 4th of August, quitted Teneriffe, and proceeded on our voyage.

On the 10th, at nine o'clock in the evening, we saw the island of Bonavista bearing south, distant about a league; though we then thought ourselves much farther off, but it soon appeared we were mistaken, for, after hauling to the eastward, to clear the sunken rocks that lie near the southeast point of the island, we found ourselves close upon them and barely weathered the breakers. Our situation was, for some minutes, so very alarming, that captain Cook did not choose to sound, as that might have increased the danger without any possibility of lessening it.

Having cleared the rocks, we steered between Bonavista and the island of Mayo, intending to look into Port Praya for the Discovery, as captain Cook had told captain Clerke that he should touch there. At one o'clock we saw the rocks southwest of Bonavista, bearing southeast, distant three or four leagues.



On Monday the 12th, at six o'clock in the morning, the island of Mayo bore south-southeast, distant four or five leagues. We sounded, and found ground at sixty fathoms. At the distance of three or four miles from this island, we saw not the least appearance of vegetation; nothing presented itself to our view, but that lifeless brown, so common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone.

During our continuance among these islands, we had gentle breezes of wind, varying from the south-east to east, and some calms. On the 13th, at nine o'clock in the morning, we arrived before Port Praya, in the island of St. Jago, where two Dutch East-India ships, and a small brigantine, were at anchor. The Discovery not being there, we did not go in, but stood to the southward.

We lost the northeast trade-wind the day after we left the Cape de Verde islands; and, on the 30th, got that which blows from the southeast. The wind, during this interval, was principally in the southwest quarter. It generally blew a gentle breeze, but sometimes fresh, and in squalls. We had few calms, and those of short duration. Between the latitude of  $12^{\circ}$ , and of  $7^{\circ}$  north, the weather was very gloomy, and frequently rainy; insomuch, that we were enabled to save as much water as filled the greatest part of our empty casks.

Every bad consequence is to be apprehended from these rains, and the close sultry weather accompanying them. Commanders of ships ought carefully to purify the air between decks with fires and smoke, and to oblige the people to change their clothes at every opportunity. These necessary precautions were strictly observed on board the Reso-

lution  
tage o  
tain C  
was v  
try we  
rain-w  
in the  
the w  
man c  
emplo  
into fa  
not tr  
On  
tor, i  
the af  
duckin  
before  
ward  
voyag  
6th of  
15' so  
met w  
days.  
ses, an  
In con  
groun  
thoms  
black  
In  
lors c  
taken  
bird,  
der p  
web-f

lution and Discovery, and we enjoyed the advantage of it, having fewer sick than on either of captain Cook's former voyages. Our ship, however, was very leaky in all her upper works. The sultry weather had opened her seams so wide that the rain-water passed through as it fell. The officers in the gun-room were driven from their cabins, by the water that came thro' the sides, and hardly a man could lie dry in his bed. The caulkers were employed to repair these defects, as soon as we got into fair settled weather; but captain Cook would not trust them over the sides while we were at sea.

On the 1st of September, we crossed the equator, in the longitude of  $27^{\circ} 38'$  west, and passed the afternoon in performing the old ceremony of ducking those who had not crossed the equator before. On the 8th, we were a little to the southward of cape St Augustine. We proceeded on our voyage without any remarkable occurrence till the 6th of October. Being then in the latitude of  $53^{\circ} 15'$  south, longitude  $7^{\circ} 45'$  west, we alternately met with light airs and calms for three successive days. For some days before we had seen albatrosses, and pintadoes, and we then saw three penguins. In consequence of this we sounded, but found no ground with a line of one hundred and fifty fathoms. We shot a few birds, one of which was a black petrel, about the size of a crow.

In the evening of the 8th, a bird, which the sailors call a noddy, settled on our rigging, and was taken. It was larger than a common English black-bird, and nearly of the same colour, except the upper part of the head, which was white. It was web-footed, had black legs, and a long black bill.

Though it is said these birds never venture far from land, we knew of none nearer our station than Gough's or Richmond island, which could not be less than one hundred leagues. But as the Atlantic Ocean, southward of us, has been but very little frequented, there may possibly be more islands than we know of. A fresh gale from the northwest succeeded this calm weather, which continued two days. Afterwards we had variable light airs for about twenty-four hours, when the northwest wind returned, and blew fresh. On the 17th we saw the Cape of Good Hope, and, on the 18th, anchored in Table-bay, in four fathoms water.

After receiving the usual visit from the master, attendant and the surgeon, captain Cook sent an officer to Baron Plettenberg, the governor, and saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and was complimented in return, with the same number. Two French East-India ships were in the bay, the one outward, and the other homeward bound.

After having saluted, captain Cook went on shore, accompanied by some of his officers, and waited on the governor, the lieutenant-governor, the fiscal, and the commander of the troops. These gentlemen received captain Cook with the greatest civility; and the governor, in particular, voluntarily promised him every assistance that the place afforded. Before captain Cook returned on board, he ordered fresh meat, greens, &c. to be provided every day for the ship's company.

On the 22d we fixed our tents and observatory; the next day we began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to discover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were set to

work  
certes  
provi  
ticle  
imme

Th  
Euro  
Engl  
dia sh

On  
south  
soluti  
the g

Th  
6th,  
capta  
in th  
She s  
and v  
not t

Capt  
one  
accid  
rived  
cove  
work  
tance  
sions

H  
cattl  
some  
out o  
We  
those

work to caulk the ship; and captain Cook had concerted measures for supplying both ships with such provisions as were wanted; and, as the several articles for the Resolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed on board.

The homeward-bound French ship sailed for Europe on the 26th, and by her we sent letters to England. The next day the Hampshire East-India ship, from Bencoolen, anchored in the bay.

On the 31st of Oct. it blew excessively hard at southeast, and continued for three days. The Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors.

The storm ceased on the 3d of Nov. and on the 6th, the Hampshire sailed for England, in which captain Cook sent home an invalid. On the 10th, in the morning, the Discovery arrived in the bay. She sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and would have been with us a week sooner, had not the late gale of wind blown her off the coast. Captain Clerke, on his passage from England, lost one of his marines, by falling over board. No other accident happened among his people, and they arrived in perfect health. The next day, the Discovery wanted caulking, captain Cook sent all his workmen on board her, and lent every other assistance to the captain to expedite his supply of provisions and water.

Having, by the governor's permission, taken our cattle on shore, on the night preceding the 14th, some dogs got in amongst the sheep, forced them out of the pen, killed four, and dispersed the rest. We recovered six of them the next day; but among those which were missing were two rams, and two



of the finest ewes in the whole flock. Though the Dutch frequently boast of the police at the Cape, yet the captain's sheep evaded all the vigilance of the fiscal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expence, by employing some of the lowest fellows of the place, we recovered all but the two ewes. One of the rams, however, was so miserably torn by the dogs, that we thought he would never recover.

Mr Hemmy, the lieutenant-governor, very obligingly offered to make up this loss, by giving captain Cook a Spanish ram, out of some he had sent for from Lisbon; but the captain declined the offer, thinking it would equally answer his purpose to take with him some of the Cape rams: In this, however, the captain was mistaken. Mr Hemmy had endeavoured to introduce European sheep at the Cape; but all his attempts were frustrated by the obstinacy of the country people, who highly esteem their own breed, on account of their large tails; the fat of which sometimes produce more money than the whole carcase besides. Indeed, the most remarkable thing in the Cape sheep is the length and thickness of their tails, which weigh from ten to fifteen pounds.

While the ships were repairing for the prosecution of our voyage, Mr Anderson, and some of our officers, made an excursion, to take a survey of the neighbouring country. Mr Anderson relates their proceedings to the following effect:

In the forenoon of Saturday the 16th of November, he, and five others, set out in a waggon, to take a view of the country. They crossed the large plain to the eastward of the town, which is en-

tirely  
monly  
they  
and v  
the soi  
arrive  
tance,

The  
lofty  
ward  
houses  
the sh  
settlm  
try.

orchar  
an ex  
owing

At  
find b  
scarce  
the ne  
they

owner  
visit  
with

receiv  
playin  
situat

noon  
large  
a fatn  
cultur  
a view

tirely a white sand, resembling that which is commonly found on beaches. At five in the afternoon they passed a large farm-house, some corn-fields and vine-yards, situate beyond the plain, where the soil appeared worth cultivating. At seven they arrived at Stellenbosh, a colony, in point of importance, next to that of the Cape.

The village stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, about twenty miles to the eastward of Cape-Town, and consists of about thirty houses, which are neat and clean: a rivulet, and the shelter of some large oaks, planted at its first settling, form a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some thriving vineyards and orchards about the place, which seem to indicate an excellent soil, though perhaps much may be owing to the uncommon serenity of the air.

At this season of the year, Mr Anderson could find but few plants in flower, and insects were very scarce. He and his companions left Stellenbosh the next morning, and soon arrived at the house they had passed on Saturday, Mr Cloeder, the owner of which, having sent them an invitation to visit him, they were entertained by this gentleman with great politeness and hospitality. They were received with a band of music, which continued playing while they were at dinner; which, in that situation, might be reckoned elegant. In the afternoon they crossed the country, and passed some large plantations. In the evening they arrived at a farm-house, which is said to be the first in the cultivated tract called the *Pearl*. Here they had a view of Drakenstein, the third colony of this coun-

try, which contains several little farms or plantations.

Plants and insects were as scarce here as at Stellenbosh; but there was a greater plenty of shrubs, or small trees, naturally produced, than they had before seen in the country.

On Tuesday the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to see a remarkable large stone, called by the inhabitants the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. It stands upon the top of some low hills, and is of an oblong shape, rounded on the top, and lying nearly south and north. The east and west sides are nearly perpendicular. The south end is not equally steep, but its greatest height is there; whence it declines gently to the north part, which they ascended, and had a very extensive prospect of the whole country.

The circumference of this stone is about half a mile, as they were half an hour walking round it, including allowances for stopping and a bad road. Its height seems to equal the dome of St Paul's church. Except some few fissures, it is one uninterrupted mass of stone. The stone is of that sort which mineralogists call *Saxum C. glutinatum*.

On the 20th, in the morning, they set out from the Pearl, and, going a different road, passed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger Hills, where they beheld some tolerable corn-fields. About noon they stopped in a valley for refreshment, where they were plagued with a vast number of mosquitoes; and, in the evening, arrived at the Cape-Town.

On Saturday the 23d, we got the observatory, clock, &c. on board. From the result of several

calcul  
clude  
ed we  
Ca  
sheep  
Hea  
two h  
some  
bits.  
Bo  
water  
every  
havin  
tions  
30th  
the a  
cut o  
ed.  
ed a  
did n  
in th  
O  
awa  
had  
6th,  
and  
of v  
of t  
num  
cov  
V  
mor  
exc  
Sev

calculations and observations, we had reason to conclude, that the watch, or time piece, had performed well all the way from England.

Captain Cook fearing a second disaster, got his sheep and other cattle on board as soon as possible. He also increased his stock by purchasing two bulls, two heifers, two stone-horses, two mares, two rams, some ewes and goats, some poultry, and some rabbits.

Both ships being supplied with provisions and water sufficient for two years and upwards, and every other necessary article, and captain Cook having given captain Clerke a copy of his instructions, we repaired on board in the morning of the 30th. A breeze sprung up at southeast, at 5 in the afternoon, with which we weighed and stood out of the bay; at nine it fell calm, and we anchored. At three o'clock the next morning we weighed and put to sea, with a light breeze at south, but did not get clear of land till the 3d of December in the morning.

On Thursday the 5th, a squall of wind carried away the mizen top-mast of the Resolution, but we had another to replace it. On the evening of the 6th, being then in the latitude of  $39^{\circ} 14'$  south, and in the  $23^{\circ} 56'$  east, we observed several spots of water of a reddish hue. Upon examining some of this water that was taken up, we perceived a number of small animals, which the microscope discovered to resemble cray-fish.

We continued to the southeast, followed by a mountainous sea, which occasioned the ship to roll exceedingly, and rendered our cattle troublesome. Several goats, especially the males, died and some



sheep. We now began to feel the cold in a very sensible degree.

On Thursday the 12th, at noon, we discovered land extending from southeast by south, to south-east by east. We, at length, discovered it to be two islands. That which lies most to the south, appeared to be about fifteen leagues in circuit; and the most northerly one, about nine leagues in circuit.

We passed at an equal distance from both islands, and could not discover either tree or shrub on either of them. They seemed to have a rocky shore, and, excepting the southeast parts, a ridge of barren mountains, whose sides and summits were covered with snow.

These two islands, and four others more to the east, were discovered by captains Marion du Fresne and Crozet, French navigators, in January 1772, on their passage from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine Islands. As they have no names in the French chart of the southern hemisphere, captain Cook named the two we now saw, Prince Edward's Islands, and the other four by the name of Marion's and Crozet's Islands.

We had now, in general, strong gales, and very indifferent weather. After leaving Pince Edward's Islands, we shaped our course to pass to the southward of the four others, to get into the latitude of the land discovered by Monsieur de Kerguelen.

Captain Cook had received instructions to examine this island, and endeavour to discover a good harbour. On the 16th we saw numbers of penguins and divers, and rock weed floating in the sea; and

on the  
ther  
ted to  
dange

On  
ing av  
east,  
consid  
cuit.

magn  
betwe  
rectio  
seen.  
tioned  
Cap.

that I  
Rend  
dezvo  
certai

Th  
we ta  
we w  
Cap  
40'.  
gale

Pr  
four  
west  
extre  
thern  
of th  
nated  
one i

on the 21st we saw a very large seal. The weather was now very foggy, and as we hourly expected to fall in with the land, our navigation was both dangerous and tedious.

On the 24th at six in the morning, the fog clearing away a little, we saw land, bearing south-southeast, which we afterwards found to be an island of considerable height, and about three leagues in circuit. We soon after discovered another of equal magnitude, about one league to the eastward; and, between these two, some smaller ones. In the direction of south by east, another high island was seen. We did but just weather the island last mentioned: it was a high round rock, named Bligh's Cap. Captain Cook supposed this to be the same that Monsieur de Kerguelen called the Isle of Rendezvous; but he knew nothing that could rendezvous at it but the fowls of the air, for it was certainly inaccessible to every other animal.

The weather beginning to clear up about eleven, we tacked, and steered in for the land. At noon we were enabled to determine the latitude of Bligh's Cap to be  $48^{\circ} 29'$  south, and its longitude  $68^{\circ} 40'$ . We passed it at three o'clock with a fresh gale at west.

Presently after we clearly saw the land, and at four o'clock it extended from southeast to southwest by south, distant about four miles. The left extreme, which captain Cook judged to be the northern point of this land, called in the French chart of the southern hemisphere Cape Francois, terminated in a high perpendicular rock; and the right one in a high indented point.

Towards the middle of the land there appeared to be an inlet ; but, on our approaching it, we saw it was only a bending in the coast : we, therefore bore up to go round Cape Francois.

Having got off the Cape, we observed the coast to the southward, much indented by points and bays, and, therefore, fully expected to find a good harbour. We soon discovered one, into which we began to ply ; but it presently fell calm, and we anchored in forty-five fathoms water: the Discovery also anchored there soon after. Mr Bligh, the master, was ordered to sound the harbour; who reported it to be safe and commodious.

Early in the morning of the 25th we weighed, and having wrought into the harbour, we anchored in eight fathoms water. The Discovery got in at two o'clock in the afternoon ; when captain Clerke informed us, that he had with difficulty escaped being driven on the south point of the harbour, his anchor having started before he could shorten in the cable. They were, therefore, obliged to set sail, and drag the anchor after them, till they had room to heave it up, when they perceived that one of its palms was broken off.

Immediately after we had anchored, captain Cook ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, and the empty water-casks to be got ready. In the mean time he landed, to search for a convenient spot where they might be filled, and to observe what the place afforded.

He found vast quantities of penguins, and other birds, and seals, on the shore. The latter were not numerous, but so insensible of fear, that we

killed  
fat a  
purp  
but  
and  
flatte  
some  
serve  
green  
he as  
ther,  
the  
so th  
he co  
even  
bour.  
fish ;  
when  
sourc  
whic  
T  
day  
grass  
of th  
a de  
hills  
with  
T  
cessi  
tain  
day  
of w  
excu  
late

killed as many as we chose, and made use of their fat and blubber to make oil for our lamps, and other purposes. Fresh water was exceedingly plentiful; but not a single tree or shrub was to be discovered, and but little herbage of any kind; though we had flattered ourselves with the hope of meeting with something considerable growing here, having observed the sides of some of the hills to be of a lively green. Before captain Cook returned to his ship, he ascended a ridge of rocks, rising one above another, expecting, by that means, to obtain a view of the country; but before he had reached the top, so thick a fog came on, that it was with difficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the evening we hauled the seine at the head of the harbour, but caught no more than half a dozen small fish; nor had we any better success the next day, when we tried with hook and line. Our only resource, therefore, for fresh provisions, was birds, which were innumerable.

Though it was both foggy and rainy, on Thursday the 26th, we began to fill water, and to cut grass for our cattle, which we found near the head of the harbour. The rivulets were swelled to such a degree, by the rain that fell, that the sides of the hills bounding the harbour, appeared to be covered with a sheet of water.

The people having laboured hard for two successive days, and nearly completed our water, captain Cook allowed them the 27th of December as a day of rest, to celebrate Christmas. In consequence of which, many of them went on shore, and made excursions into the country, which they found desolate and barren in the extreme. In the evening



one of them presented a quart bottle to captain Cook, which he had found on the north-side of the harbour, fastened with some wire to a projecting rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment, with the following inscription :

*Ludovico, XV. Galliarum  
rege, et d\* de Boynes  
regi a Secretis ad res  
ingratis annis 1772 et  
1773.*

It is evident, from this inscription, that we were not the first Europeans who had visited this harbour. Captain Cook supposes it to have been left by Monsieur de Boisguchenneu, who went on shore the 13th of February 1772, the day that Monsieur de Kerguelen discovered this land ; but the captain appears to be for once mistaken ; for how could Monsieur de Boisguchenneu, in the beginning of 1772, leave an inscription which commemorates a transaction of the following year ?

Captian Cook, as a memorial of our having been in this harbour, wrote on the other side of the parchment as follows :

*Naves Resolution  
et Discovery  
de Rege Magnæ Britannicæ,  
Decembris 1776.*

He then put it again into the bottle, accompanied with a silver two-penny piece of 1772, covered the mouth of the bottle with a leaden cap, and

\* The *d* is probably a contraction of the word *Domino*

n Cook,  
the har-  
g rock.  
r; with

e were  
is har-  
en left  
n shore  
onsieur  
e cap-  
could  
ing of  
ates a

g been  
parch.

npani-  
covered  
, and

mines



J. G. G. G. G.

A VIEW OF CHRISTMAS HARBOUR, IN KERGUELEN'S LAND.

placed  
for the  
were i  
the B  
bour, i

It i  
southe  
north  
of this  
it from  
more  
high r  
pearan  
the ha  
compa  
sing, s  
is high  
chang

In t  
Mr K  
Franc  
a view  
But t  
hid in  
of a g  
ed exc  
hills t  
snow.  
found  
we di  
mornin

As  
which  
the co

placed it next morning in a pile of stones, erected for that purpose on an eminence, near the place where it was found. Here captain Cook displayed the British flag, and named the place *Christmas Harbour*, it being on that festival we arrived in it.

It is the first inlet that we meet with on the southeast side of Cape Francois, which forms the north side of the harbour, and is the northern point of this land. The situation sufficiently distinguishes it from any of the other inlets; and to make it still more remarkable, its south point terminates in a high rock, perforated quite through, forming an appearance like the arch of a bridge. The head of the harbour lies open to only two points of the compass, and these are covered by islands in the offing, so that a sea cannot fall in to hurt a ship. It is high water here about ten o'clock at the full and change days, and the tide rises about four feet.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr King, his Second Lieutenant, went upon Cape Francois; expecting from this elevation to have had a view of the sea coast, and the islands lying off it. But they found every distant object below them hid in a thick fog. The land even with them, or of a greater height was visible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and desolate; except some hills to the southward, which were covered with snow. When they returned to the ship, they found her unmoored, and ready to put to sea; but we did not weigh anchor till five o'clock the next morning.

As soon as the ships cleared Christmas Harbour, which was on Sunday the 29th, we steered along the coast in a southeast direction; and notwith-



standing for some time past fogs had prevailed more or less every day, we had a fine breeze at northwest, and clear weather. Though we kept the lead constantly going, we seldom struck the ground with a sixty fathom line.

About eight o'clock, we were off a promontory which captain Cook named Cape Cumberland. It is situate about a league and a half from the southmost point of Christmas Harbour; and between them is a bay with two arms. Off Cape Cumberland is a small but high island, on the top of which is a rock somewhat like a sentry-box, which occasioned our giving it that name. Two miles farther to the eastward lies a group of other small islands between which and Sentry-box Island we sailed, the channel being a full mile broad, and forty fathoms deep, having sounded with a line of that length.

Having passed through this channel, we discovered a bay running in three leagues to the westward, which is formed by Cape Cumberland to the north, and a promontory to the south. This the captain named Point Pringle, in compliment to Sir John Pringle, President of the Royal Society. The bottom of the bay is named Cumberland Bay.

To the southward of this a fifth bay is formed, which was named White Bay, on account of some white sands or rocks in the bottom. There are also several lesser bays or coves, which appeared to be sheltered from all winds. Off the south point, several rocks raise their head above water, and probably there are many others that do not.

Thus far we had steered in a direction parallel to the coast, and at no time more than two miles from

it. V  
quentl  
ing th

Ha  
we fir  
tion o  
expect  
but w  
of the  
by th  
Bay.

named  
Howe

On  
of roc  
ward  
noon  
ing st  
when

The c  
The l  
Some

Ha

tioned  
ed wi  
fast to  
times  
which  
surfac  
sail o  
deavo  
chann

was a  
contin

VOL

it. We observed the beach to be sandy, and frequently swarming with birds, but all along retaining the same barren and naked appearance.

Having kept on the larboard bow, the land which we first discovered off Cape Francois, in the direction of south  $53^{\circ}$  east, we took for an island, and expected to find a passage between it and the main; but we found it to be a peninsula, joined to the rest of the coast by a low isthmus. The bay formed by this peninsula, captain Cook named Repulse Bay. The northern point of the peninsula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe.

On our approach to it, we discovered a number of rocks and breakers, and two islands to the eastward of it, which at first seemed but one. About noon we were in the middle of the channel, having steered betwixt the island and the foreland, when our latitude we found to be  $48^{\circ} 51'$  south. The coast is but low and crowded with sea-birds. The land is pretty high and of a rocky substance. Some seals were observed upon the beaches.

Having cleared the rocks and islands before mentioned, we found the sea before us to be checquered with sea weeds, which we were sensible were fast to the bottom. A great depth of water is sometimes found on such shoals; notwithstanding of which, the tops of some rocks nearly touched the surface of the water. This makes it dangerous to sail over them without examining them. We endeavoured to avoid them, by sailing through the channels whereby they were separated. The sea was as smooth as a mill-pond, and we kept the lead continually going, yet never struck the ground,

even with a line of sixty fathoms. Having run in this manner for an hour, we discovered a large rock even with the water, amidst a bed of weeds: this was sufficiently alarming to make us take every precaution to avoid danger.

We were now about eight miles to the southward of Howe's island, across the mouth of a large bay. In this bay are several rocks, low islands, and beds of sea weed, but there appeared to be winding channels between them. We were so much embarrassed with these shoals, that we hauled off to the eastward, in hopes of extricating ourselves from our difficulties; but this plunged us into greater, and we found it absolutely necessary to secure the ships, if possible, before night, especially as the weather was hazy, and a fog was apprehended.

Observing some inlets to the southwest of this, captain Clerke was ordered to lead in for the shore, as his vessel drew less water than the Resolution; this he attempted, by running over the edges of some of the shoals, having from ten to twenty fathoms water; which so soon as he passed, he had no ground at the depth of fifty fathoms. About five o'clock in the evening, captain Clerke made the signal for discovering a harbour, in which we got to a safe anchor in a little time thereafter, at about half a mile distant from the shore.

We were scarce settled when the wind blew very strong; it however continued fair, and the fogs being dispersed, we got a good view of the country round: Mr Bligh, the master of captain Cook's vessel, was ordered ashore with two boats, to sur-

vey the  
wood.

He  
ter to  
and w  
by Mr  
north  
from t

Fro  
pretty  
Forela  
points  
inlets  
end o  
from t  
point  
islands

the co  
ward;  
of the  
had en

WH  
ing th  
and jo  
attend  
their  
count  
than t  
he obs  
ing fo  
they  
their  
Cook  
ber of

vey the upper part of the harbour, and look out for wood.

He also desired captain Clerke to send his master to sound the channel south of the small isles, and went himself in his other boat, accompanied by Mr Gore and Mr Bailey, and landed on the north point, to see what discovery could be made from thence.

From the highest hill over the point, they had a pretty good view of the sea-coast, as far as Howe's Foreland. It is much indented, and several rocky points seemed to shoot out from it, with coves and inlets of unequal extent. One of the latter, the end of which they could not see, was disjoined from that in which the ships were at anchor, by the point they then stood upon. A great many small islands, rocks, and breakers appeared scattered along the coast, as well to the southward as to the northward; and they saw no better channel to get out of the harbour, than by the one through which they had entered it.

While captain Cook and Mr Bailey were making these observations, Mr Gore encompassed a hill, and joined them at the place where the boat was attending for them. There was nothing to obstruct their walk, except some craggy precipices; the country being if possible more barren and desolate than that about Christmas Harbour. With regret he observed, that there was neither food nor covering for cattle of any sort, and if he had left any they must have perished. In the little cove where their boat was waiting for them, (which captain Cook called Penguin Cove, from the immense number of those birds appearing there) is a fine river



of fresh water, which we could approach without difficulty. Some large large seals, shags, and a few ducks were seen here; and Mr Bailey had a glance of a very small land-bird, but it flew away among the rocks and they lost it.

They got on board at nine, and Mr Bligh returned soon after: he reported that he had been four miles up the harbour, probably near the top of it; he found its direction to be southwest; its breadth near the ships about a mile, but narrower farther up. He found the country very rocky, and very little verdure of any kind. Penguins and other birds were seen in great numbers.

Next morning we put to sea, captain Cook having named the harbour Port Palliser. It is situate  $49^{\circ} 3'$  south latitude, and  $69^{\circ} 37'$  east longitude, and lies about five leagues south east from Howe's Foreland.

At four leagues distance, they perceived a round hill like a sugar loaf, which was named Mount Campbell; a low point, beyond which no land was to be seen, bore southeast at about twenty miles distance; we were then two leagues from shore. The land is low and level. The mountains end about five leagues from the low point, leaving a great extent of low land, on which Mount Campbell is situated. These mountains seemed to be composed of naked rocks, whose summits were covered with snow; and nothing but sterility was to be seen in the vallies,

At noon we perceived low land, opening off the low point just mentioned, in the direction of south-southeast. It proved to be the eastern extremity of this land, and was named Cape Digby.

The sh  
to Ho  
tity of  
tinguis  
the ste  
man's  
length  
We  
one o'  
which  
ing im  
farthe  
coast,  
by sou  
honou  
Charle  
Six  
of sou  
ing po  
land;  
rectio  
the lo  
point  
the m  
ty.  
Be  
Wale  
was  
south  
on th  
Forel  
Soun  
vated  
sider

The shore forms one great bay from Cape Digby to Howe's Foreland; which produces a vast quantity of sea-weed, of that sort which Mr Banks distinguishes by the name of *fucus giganteus*. Though the stem of this weed is not much thicker than a man's thumb, some of it grows to the amazing length of sixty fathoms.

We observed a small bending in the coast, about one o'clock, on the north side of Cape Digby, for which we steered, intending to anchor, which finding impossible, we stretched forward, to make what farther observations we could that night. The coast, from Cape Digby, trends nearly southwest by south to a low point, to which captain Cook, in honour of her Majesty, gave the name of Point Charlotte.

Six leagues from Cape Digby, in the direction of south-southwest  $\frac{1}{2}$  west, is a pretty high projecting point, which was called prince of Wales's Foreland; and six leagues beyond that, in the same direction, and in the latitude of  $49^{\circ} 54'$  south, and the longitude of  $70^{\circ} 13'$  east, is the most southerly point of the whole coast, which he distinguished by the name of Cape George, in honour of his Majesty.

Between Point Charlotte and the Prince of Wales's Foreland, we discovered a deep inlet, which was called Royal Sound; and advancing to the south, we saw another inlet into the Royal Sound, on the southwest side of the Prince of Wales's Foreland. On the southwest side of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George consists of elevated hills, gradually rising from the sea, to a considerable height; they were naked and barren, and

their summits capt with snow. Not a vestige of a tree or shrub was to be seen. Some of the low land about Cape Digby, seemed to be covered with a green turf, but a considerable part of it appeared quite naked. Penguins and other oceanic birds were numerous on the beaches, and shags innumerable kept flying about our ships.

Anxious to get the length of Cape St George, in order to be certain whether it was the most southerly point or not, we stretched to the south, with all the sail we could carry; but the wind shifting, we found it impossible to proceed in that direction, and stood away from the coast.

At this time Cape George bore south  $53^{\circ}$  west, distant about seven leagues. We observed no land to the south of it, except a small island, that lies off the pitch of the Cape; and a southwest swell which we met, when we brought the Cape to bear in this direction, almost convinced us that there was no more in that quarter.

The French discoverers imagined Cape Francois to be the projecting point of a southern continent. The English have discovered that no such continent exists, and that the land in question is an island of small extent; which, from its sterility, might properly be called the Island of Desolation; But captain Cook was unwilling to rob Monsieur de Kerguelen of the honour of its bearing his name.

Mr Anderson, who, during the short time we lay in Christmas Harbour, lost no opportunity of searching the country in every direction, relates the following particulars:

No place (says he) hitherto discovered in either hemisphere, affords so scanty a field for the natu-

turalist appear shore, meetin appear sembl spread dried, seen h pose.

And of two the bo small the wa though When land s rank f ripe en to our

Ne two of the on other not on plants in a f cut de logue a beau Nor the w

AN

turalist as this sterile spot. Some verdure, indeed, appeared, when at a small distance from the shore, which might raise the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but all this lively appearance was occasioned by one small plant, resembling saxifrage, which grew up the hills in large spreading tufts, on a kind of rotten turf, which, if dried, might serve for fuel, and was the only thing seen here that could possibly be applied to that purpose.

Another plant, which grew to near the height of two feet, was pretty plentifully scattered about the boggy declivities: it had the appearance of a small cabbage when it has shot into seeds. It had the watery acrid taste of the antiscorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe. When eaten raw, it was not unlike the New Zealand scurvy-grass; but when boiled, it acquired a rank flavour. At this time, none of its seeds were ripe enough to be brought home, and introduced into our English kitchen-gardens.

Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other small plants, which were eaten as sallad; the one like garden cresses, and very hot; and the other very mild: the latter is a curiosity, having not only male and female, but also androgynous plants. Some coarse grass grew pretty plentifully in a few small spots near the harbour, which was cut down for our cattle. In short the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen, including a beautiful species of lichen, and several sorts of moss. Nor was there the appearance of a tree or shrub in the whole country.

Among the animals, the most considerable were



seals, which were distinguished by the name of sea-bears, being the sort that are called the ursine seal. They came on shore to repose and breed. At that time they were shedding their hair, and so remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them.

No other quadruped was seen; but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, shags, petrels, &c. The ducks were somewhat like a widgeon, both in size and figure; a considerable number of them were killed and eaten: they were excellent food, and had not the least fishy taste.

The Cape petrel, the small blue one, and the small black one, or Mother Carey's chicken, were not plenty here; but another sort, which is the largest of the petrels, and called by the seamen Mother Carey's goose, is found in abundance. This petrel is as large as an albatross, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcasses of seals, birds, &c.

The greatest number of birds here were penguins, which consist of three sorts. The head of the largest is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden grey, the under part white, and the feet black; two broad stripes of fine yellow descend from the head to the breast; the bill is of a reddish colour, and longer than in the other sorts. The second sort is about half the size of the former. It is of a blackish grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white spot on the upper part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowish. In the third sort, the upper part of the body and throat are black, the rest white, except the top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine yellow arch, which it can erect as two crests.

The  
cormo  
ish bac  
tern, u  
hen, w

Lar  
about  
ed wit  
white  
the fle

The  
few fis  
only s  
muscle

Ma  
a mod  
snow,  
able to  
as wel  
rushed

try, w  
or swa

Th  
and v  
glimm  
were  
stone.

Ha  
steere  
Zeala  
pose o  
cattle  
consid  
longit

The shags here were of two sorts, viz. the lesser cormorant, or water-crow, and another with a blackish back and a white belly. The sea swallow, the tern, the common sea-gull, and the Port Egmont hen, were also found here.

Large flocks of a singular kind of white bird flew about here, having the base of the bill covered with a horny crust. It had a black bill and white feet, was somewhat larger than a pigeon, and the flesh tasted like that of a duck.

The seine was once hauled, when we found a few fish about the size of a small haddock. The only shell fish we saw here were a few limpets and muscles.

Many of the hills, notwithstanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with snow, though answering to our June. It is reasonable to imagine that rain must be very frequent here, as well from the marks of large torrents having rushed down, as from the appearance of the country, which, even on the hills, was a continued bog or swamp.

The rocks consist principally of a dark blue and very hard stone intermixed with particles of glimmer or quartz. Some considerable rocks were also formed here from a brownish brittle stone.

Having left Kerguelen's land, captain Cook steered east by north in order to proceed to New Zealand, according to his instructions, for the purpose of taking in wood and water, and hay for the cattle; of which last article our stock was now considerably reduced. The 31st of December, our longitude by observation of the sun and moon, was

72° 33' 36" east; and on the first day of the year 1777, we were in the latitude of 48° 41' south, longitude 75° 50' east. Till the third of January the weather was tolerably clear, with fresh gales from the west and southwest; but now the wind veered to the north, and continued in that quarter eight days; during which, tho' there was at the same time a thick fog, we ran upwards of three hundred leagues, chiefly in the dark; the sun indeed sometimes made its appearance, but very rarely. On the 7th captain Cook dispatched a boat with orders to captain Clerke, fixing their rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Diemen's Land, if the ships should happen to separate before they arrived there; however we had the good fortune not to lose company with each other. On Sunday the 12th, the northerly winds were succeeded by a calm, which was soon followed by a southerly wind. Our latitude was now 48° 40' south, longitude 110° 26' east. The wind blew from the south a whole day, and then veering to the west and northwest, brought on some fair weather.

They continued their course to the eastward without interruption, till the nineteenth, when the fore-top-mast of the Resolution went by the board, and carried the main-top-gallant-mast with it; this occasioned some delay in refitting. The wind continued westerly, and though it blew very fresh, the weather was notwithstanding clear. In the morning of the 24th, we discovered Van Diemen's Land bearing towards the northwest. Our latitude being at noon 43° 47' south, longitude 137° east. Captain Cook gave the name of the Eddystone to a rock that lies about a league to the eastward of

Swilly  
sembl  
rocks  
able  
under  
are so  
if this  
harbo  
Ab  
which  
for th  
could  
land.  
anch  
ter, a  
ters o

Al  
went  
comm  
plies.  
easily  
coarse  
detac  
King  
grass,  
thoug  
also s  
and a  
plove  
Th  
haul  
all ha  
when  
A

Swilly Isle or Rock, on account of its striking resemblance to Eddystone light-house. These two rocks may, even in the night, be seen at a considerable distance, and are the summits of a ledge of rocks under water. On the northeast side of Storm Bay are some creeks that seem tolerably sheltered; and if this coast was carefully examined, several good harbours would most probably be found.

About noon on the 26th, a breeze sprung up, which determined us to anchor in Adventure Bay, for the purpose of watering, &c: which was found could not be wanted till our arrival at New-Zealand. The ships therefore stood in for the Bay, and anchored in a sandy bottom, in twelve fathoms water, at the distance from shore of about three quarters of a mile.

After anchoring, captains Cook and Clerke went ashore in the boats, to look out for the most commodious place for procuring the necessary supplies. Wood and water they found could be procured easily, but grass, which was principally needed, was coarse and bad. The next morning captain Cook detached two parties under the conduct of lieutenant King, to the east side of the bay to cut wood and grass, some marines attending them as a guard, though none of the natives had yet appeared. He also sent the launch to provide water for the ships, and afterwards paid a visit to the parties thus employed.

The seine was drawn in the evening, and at one haul a great quantity of fish was taken: after which all hands returned on board, to be ready for sailing, when the wind should permit.

As this however did not happen, the next day



was employed for cutting down spars for the ships. We were surprised in the afternoon with a visit from some of the natives : eight men and a boy approached us from the woods, with the greatest confidence, none of them having weapons, but one, who held in his hand a stick, about two feet long, pointed at one end. They were quite naked, and wore no ornaments, unless we consider as such some large punctures or ridges on different parts of their bodies, some in straight, and some in curved lines. They were of the common stature, but slender. Their skin was black, and also their hair, which was as woolly as that of any native of Guinea ; but they had not remarkably thick lips nor flat noses ; on the contrary, their features were far from being disagreeable. They had pretty good eyes, and their teeth were tolerably even, but very dirty. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with a red ointment ; with which some also had their faces painted.

Every present made to them they received without any appearance of satisfaction. When some bread was given, as soon as they understood it was to be eaten, they either returned it, or threw it away, without even tasting it. They also refused some fish, both raw and dressed ; but on giving some birds to them, their behaviour indicated a fondness for such food. Captain Cook had brought two pigs ashore, with a view to leave them in the woods ; but the instant these came within reach of the savages, they seized them, as a dog would have done, by the ears, and were for carrying them off immediately ; with no other intention, as could be perceived, but to kill them. Being desirous of know-

ing th  
Cook,  
him.  
mark,  
yards.  
wide  
the su  
quet a  
fled in

Imm  
ordere  
female  
and, he  
none o  
He als  
cow, b  
linguis  
tives v  
would  
to find  
and a  
that th  
not ha  
vages,  
place.

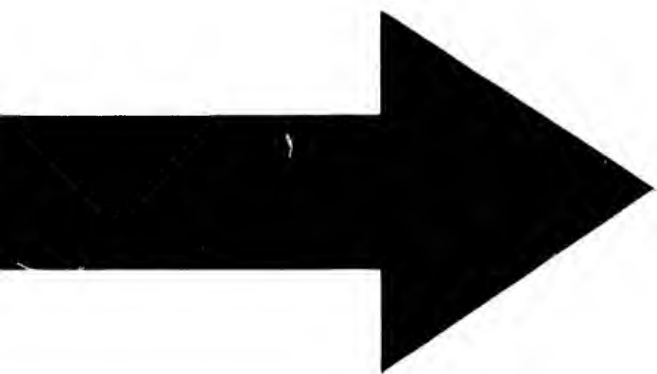
We  
a dead  
tain C  
wood a  
woodin  
about t  
disting  
droller  
mour o

ing the use of the stick before mentioned, captain Cook, by signs, prevailed upon one of them to show him. This savage set up a piece of wood as a mark, and threw at it, at a distance of about 20 yards. On repeated trials, however, he was always wide ~~from~~ from his object. Omai, to show them the superiority of our weapons, then fired his musquet at it, which alarmed them so much, that they fled into the woods with great precipitation.

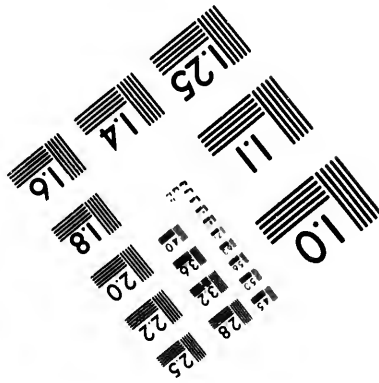
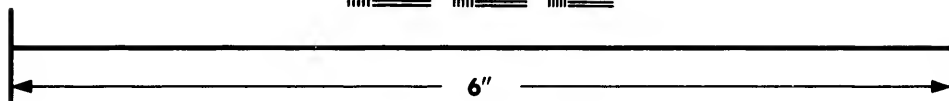
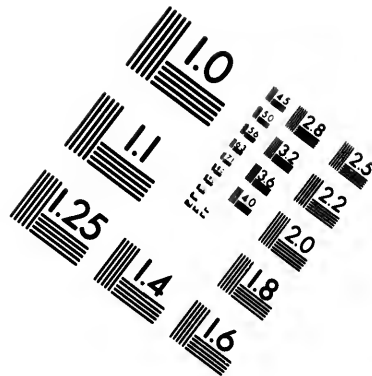
Immediately after they had retired, captain Cook ordered the two pigs, one a male and the other a female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and, he himself saw them left there, taking care that none of the natives should observe what was passing. He also intended to have left a young bull and a cow, besides some goats and sheep; but he soon relinquished that design, being of opinion that the natives would destroy them; which he supposed would be the fate of the pigs, if they should chance to find them out. But as swine soon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preserved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the savages, as they must have been put into an open place.

We were prevented from sailing on the 29th by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Captain Cook, therefore, sent parties on shore to cut wood and grass, as usual; and he accompanied the wooding party himself. Soon after our landing, about twenty of them joined us, one of whom was distinguished not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his gesticulations, and the seeming humour of his speeches, which, however, we could









# Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14590  
(716) 872-4503



not understand. Those whom we now saw differed in some respects, particularly in the texture of the hair, from the natives of the more northerly parts of this country, whom captain Cook met with in his first voyage. Some of our present company had a slip of the kangaroo skin round their ancles; and others wore round their necks some small cord made of fur. They seemed not to value iron, but were apparently pleased with the medals and beads that were given them. They did not even appear to know the use of fish-hooks, though it is more than probable that they were acquainted with some method of catching fish.

Their habitations were little sheds or hovels built of sticks, and covered with bark. Evident signs appeared of their sometimes taking up their abode in the trunks of large trees, which had been hollowed out by fire; and the marks of fire near their habitations, and near every heap of shells, were indubitable proofs that they did not eat their food raw.

Captain Cook, on leaving the wooding party, went to the grass cutters, and having seen the boats loaded with hay, returned on board. He had just quitted the shore, when several women and children appeared, and were introduced to lieutenant King, by the men who accompanied them. These females wore a kangaroo skin (in the shape as it came from the animal) tied over their shoulders, and round the waist. Its only use seemed to be, to support their children when carried on their backs; for it did not cover those parts which modesty directs us to conceal; their bodies were black, and

marked like those of the men with scars. Some of them had their hair completely shaved; others on the one side only; while the rest of them had all the upper part of the head shorn close, having a circle of hair all round, something like the tonsure of the Roman Ecclesiastics. Many of the children had fine features, and were thought pretty, but the women in general were far from handsome. Some of our gentlemen paid their addresses to them, accompanied with large presents, which were rejected with great disdain; whether from a sense of virtue, or fear of displeasing their men, is not certain. That the husbands did not relish this gallantry, was clear, from their behaviour on the occasion. Captain Cook's reflections on this circumstance we shall give in his own words. 'This conduct of the Europeans among savages, to their women, is highly blameable; as it creates a jealousy in their men, that may be attended with fatal consequences, fatal to the success of the common enterprize, and to the whole body of the adventurers, without advancing the private purpose of the individual, or enabling him to gain the object of his wishes. I believe it has been generally found, among uncivilized people, that where the women are easy of access, the men are the first to offer them to strangers; and that where that is not the case, neither the allurements of presents, nor the opportunity of privacy, will be likely to have the desired effect. This observation, I am sure will hold good, through all the parts of the South Sea where I have been.'

During our continuance in Van Diemen's Land we had either light airs from the east, or calms:

we therefore lost little or no time by touching on this coast. This land was discovered in November 1642, by Tasman, who gave it the name of Van Diemen's Land. Captain Furneaux touched at it in March 1773. It is the southern point of New-Holland, which is by far the largest island in the known world, and almost deserves the name of a continent. The land is diversified with hills and vallies and well wooded. The only wind to which Adventure Bay is exposed, is the northeast: and, upon the whole, this may be considered as a very safe road. Its latitude is  $43^{\circ} 21' 20''$  south, and its longitude  $147^{\circ} 29'$  east.

Mr Anderson, surgeon of the Resolution, employed himself in examining the country during our continuance in Adventure Bay. His remarks on the inhabitants and their language, and his account of the natural productions of the country, are to the following purport:

There is a beautiful sandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed to all appearance by the particles which the sea washes from a fine white sand-stone. This beach is very well adapted for hauling a seine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackish lake, out of which we caught by angling some bream and trout. The parts adjoining the bay are mostly hilly, and are an entire forest of tall trees, rendered almost impassable by brakes of fern, shrubs, &c. The soil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills, is sandy, or consists of a yellowish earth, and in some parts of a reddish clay; but farther up the hills, it is of a grey tough cast. This country, upon the whole, bears many marks of being very dry, and the heat

ap  
of  
ob  
the  
are  
the  
pri  
mil  
phi  
dru  
abo  
goo  
may  
the  
mal  
bro  
low  
mot  
its  
blac  
ston  
V  
snak  
ard  
rou  
blac  
A  
rays  
gurn  
we  
part  
fish.  
fish



appears to be great. No mineral bodies, nor stones of any other kind than the white sand-stone, were observed by us; nor could we find any vegetables that afforded subsistence for men. The forest trees are all of one kind, and generally quite straight: they bear clusters of small white flowers. The principal plants we observed were wood-sorrel, milk-wort, cudweed, bell-flower, gladiolus, samphire, and several kinds of fern. The only quadruped we saw distinctly was a species of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat. The kangaroo, found father northward in New-Holland, may also be supposed to inhabit here, as some of the inhabitants had pieces of the skin of that animal.

The principal sorts of birds in the woods are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowish paroquets and a species which we called *motacilla cyanea*, from the beautiful azure colour of its head and neck. On the shore were several gulls, black oyster catchers, or sea-pies, and plovers of a stone colour,

We observed in the woods some blackish snakes that were pretty large, and we killed a lizard which was about fifteen inches long and six round, very beautifully clouded with yellow and black.

Among a variety of fish we caught some large rays, nurses, leather-jackets, bream, soles, flounders, gurnards, and elephant-fish; besides a sort which we did not recollect to have seen before, and which partakes of the nature both of a round and a flat fish. Upon the rocks are muscles and other shell-fish; and upon the beach we found some pretty Mc-

dusa's heads. The most troublesome insects we met with, were the mosquitoes, and a large black ant, whose bite inflicts extreme pain.

The inhabitants seemed mild and chearful, with little of that wild appearance that savages in general have. They are almost totally devoid of personal activity or genius, and are nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego. They display however some contrivance in their method of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raised above the surface of the skin. Their indifference for our presents, their general inattention, and want of curiosity, were very remarkable, and testified no acuteness of understanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they sometimes heighten by smutting their bodies, as we supposed, from their leaving a mark behind on any clean substance. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with grease and red ochre, like that of the Hottentots. Their noses are broad and full, and the lower part of the face projects considerably. Their eyes are of a moderate size, and though they are not very quick or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, chearful, and pleasing cast. Their teeth are not very white, nor well set, and their mouths are too wide; they wear their beards long and clotted with paint. They are upon the whole well proportioned, though their belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to stand with one side forward, and one hand grasping, across the back, the opposite arm, which, on this occasion, hangs down by the side that projects.

Near the shore in the bay, we observed some wretched constructions of sticks covered with bark;

but  
they  
mor  
The  
heig  
they  
their  
whic  
of sh  
side  
with  
T  
from  
nort  
Tho  
larit  
unite  
of t  
mate  
A  
have  
thing  
semb  
licol  
that  
place  
for,  
from  
simil  
first  
the t  
ty vo  
viz.

but these seemed to have been only temporary; and they had converted many of their largest trees into more comfortable and commodious habitations. The trunks of these were hollowed out, to the height of six or seven feet, by means of fire. That they sometimes dwell in them, was manifest from their hearths in the middle made of clay, round which four or five persons might sit. These places of shelter are rendered durable, by their leaving one side of the tree sound, so that it continues growing with great luxuriance.

That the natives of Van Diemen's land originate from the same stock with those who inhabit the northern parts of New-Holland, seems evident. Though they differ in many respects, their dissimilarity may be reasonably accounted for, from the united considerations of distance of place, length of time, total separation, and diversity of climate.

As the inhabitants of New-Holland seem all to have sprung from one common source, there is nothing very peculiar in them; for they greatly resemble the savages of the islands of Tanna and Mallicolla. There is even some reason for supposing that they may originally have come from the same place with all the natives of the Pacific Ocean: for, of about ten words which we found means to get from them, that which is used to express *cold*, is very similar to that of New-Zealand and Otaheite; the first being *mallareede*, the second *mabka'reede*, and the third *ma'reede*. The remainder of our scanty vocabulary of Van Diemen's Land is as follows, viz.

Quadne,	<i>a woman.</i>
Ève'rai,	<i>the eye.</i>
Muidje,	<i>the nose.</i>
Ka'my,	<i>the teeth, mouth, or tongue.</i>
Lae'renne,	<i>a small bird, living in the woods here.</i>
Koy'gee,	<i>the ear,</i>
Teegeera,	<i>to eat.</i>
No'onga,	<i>elevated scars on the body.</i>
Toga'rago,	<i>I will go, or I must be gone.</i>

It will probably be found, upon a diligent inquiry, and an accurate comparison drawn from the affinity of languages, that all the people from New-Holland, eastward to Easter Island, are of the same extraction.

On the 30th of January, in the morning, we weighed anchor with a light westerly breeze, from Adventure Bay. Soon after we had put to sea, the wind became southerly, and produced a perfect storm; but veering in the evening to the east and northeast, its fury began to abate. This wind was attended with an almost intolerable heat, which, however, was of so short a continuance, that some of our company did not perceive it.

In the night, between the 6th and 7th of February, one of the Discovery's marines fell overboard and was drowned. On the 10th, in the afternoon, we descried the coast of New-Zealand, at the distance of about eight or nine leagues. We then steered for Cape Farewell, and afterwards for Stephen's Island; and in the morning of the 12th, anchored in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. We soon after landed many empty water casks, and cleared

a pl  
seve  
very  
on b  
ordis  
them  
sent  
guish  
man,  
ed on  
this  
hensi  
neau  
capt  
his fr  
on th  
of sus  
two t  
Mess  
their  
were  
filled  
and  
were  
ing t  
marin  
feren  
the v  
if the  
did n  
D  
came  
their



a place for two observatories. In the mean time several canoes came along-side of our ships; but very few of those who were in them would venture on board. This shyness appeared the more extraordinary, as captain Cook was well known to all of them; and as one man in particular, among the present group, had been treated by him with distinguished kindness during a former voyage. This man, however, could not by any means be prevailed on to come on board. We could only account for this reserve by supposing, that they were apprehensive of our revenging the death of Captain Eurneaux's people who had been killed here. But upon captain Cook's assuring them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on that account, they soon laid aside all appearance of suspicion and distrust. The next day we pitched two tents, and erected the observatories, in which Messrs King and Bailey immediately commenced their astronomical operations. Two of our men were employed in brewing spruce beer; while others filled the water casks, collected grass for the cattle, and cut wood. Those who remained on board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing the necessary duty of the ships. A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties on shore, and arms were given to all the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives if they had been inclined to molest us; but this did not appear to be the case.

During the course of this day, many families came from various parts of the coast, and erected their huts close to our encampment. The facility



with which they build these temporary habitations is remarkable. They have been seen to erect above twenty of them on a spot of ground, which was covered with plants and shrubs not an hour before. Captain Cook was present when a number of savages landed, and built a village of this kind. They had no sooner leaped from the canoes, than they tore up the shrubs and plants from the ground they had fixed upon, or put up some part of the framing of a hut. While the men were thus employed, the women took care of the canoes, secured the provisions and utensils, and gathered dry sticks, to serve as materials for a fire. These huts are sufficiently calculated for affording shelter from the rain and wind. The same tribe or family, however large, generally associate and build together; so that their towns and villages are usually divided by palisades into separate districts.

We received considerable advantage from the natives coming to live with us; for, every day, some of them were occupied in catching fish, a good share of which we generally procured by exchanges. Besides fish, we had other refreshments in abundance. Scurvy-grass, celery, and portable soup, were boiled every day with the wheat and pease; and we had spruce beer for our drink. Such a regimen soon removed all seeds of the scurvy from our people, if any of them had contracted it. But indeed, on our arrival here, we had only two invalids in both ships.

We were occasionally visited by other natives, besides those who lived close to us. Their articles of traffic were fish, curiosities, and women; the two first of which were speedily disposed of, but the

latte  
had  
obse  
comm  
vent  
he d  
al vi  
the p  
He v  
some  
kill  
prob  
proof  
occu  
by tu  
other  
Ca  
search  
villag  
Motu  
lage,  
been  
ing in  
tigr  
had b  
capt  
bly b  
for, a  
radish  
&c.  
the l  
single  
had in  
Ea

latter did not come to a good market, as our crew had conceived a dislike to them. Captain Cook observes upon this occasion, that he connived at a connexion with women, because he could not prevent it; but that he never encouraged it, because he dreaded its consequences. Among our occasional visitors was a chief called Kahoorā, who headed the party that cut off captain Furneaux's people. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even importuned captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in the severest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred to us; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited our commodore to destroy the other.

Captain Cook, on the 15th, went in a boat to search for grass, and visited the hippah, or fortified village, at the southwest point of the island of Motuara. He observed no inhabitants at this village, though there were evident marks of its having been lately occupied, the houses and palisades being in a state of good repair. Not the smallest vestige remained of the English garden-seeds which had been planted at this hippah in 1773, during captain Cook's second voyage. They had probably been all rooted out to make room for buildings; for, at the other gardens then planted, we found radishes, onions, leeks, cabbages, purslain, potatoes, &c. Tho' the natives of New-Zealand are fond of the last-mentioned root, they had not planted a single one, much less any of the other articles we had introduced among them.

Early in the morning of the 16th, the captains

Cook and Clerke, and several of the officers and sailors, accompanied by Omai and two New Zealanders, set out, in five boats, to collect fodder for the cattle. Having proceeded about three leagues up the Sound, they landed on the east side, where they cut a sufficient quantity of grass to load the two launches. On their return down the Sound, they paid a visit to Grass Cove, the place where captain Furneaux's people had been massacred. They here met with captain Cook's old friend Pedro, who is mentioned by him in the history of his second voyage. He, and another New-Zealander, received them on the beach, armed with the spear and patoo, though not without manifest signs of fear. Their apprehensions, however, were quickly dissipated by a few presents, which brought down to the shore two or three others of the family.

During the continuance of our party at this place, the commodore being desirous of inquiring into the particular circumstances relative to the massacre of our countrymen, fixed upon Omai as an interpreter for that purpose, as his language was a dialect of that of New-Zealand. Pedro, and the other natives who were present, none of whom had been concerned in that unfortunate transaction, answered every question without reserve. Their information imported, that while our people were at dinner, some of the natives stole, or snatched from them, some fish and bread, for which offence they received some blows: a quarrel immediately ensued, and two of the savages were shot dead, by the only two musquets that were fired; for, before a third was discharged, the natives rushed furiously upon our people, and being superior in number, destroyed

them  
out  
the  
van  
of it.

A  
the o  
steali  
him  
hearin  
was  
who,  
them  
sacrifi

It  
it is n  
tives  
in the  
same  
were  
preme  
thefts  
chief

Win  
been  
seited,  
strange

Our  
ing, a  
They  
began  
not wit  
the shi  
till the

them all: Pedro and his companions also pointed out the very spot where the *fracas* happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black servant of captain Furneaux had been left to take care of it.

According to another account, this negro was the occasion of the quarrel; for one of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a stick. His countrymen hearing his cries, at some distance, imagined he was killed, and immediately attacked our people, who, before they could reach the boat, or prepare themselves against the unexpected assault, fell a sacrifice to the fury of the exasperated savages.

It is probable, both these accounts were true; as it is natural to suppose, that while some of the natives were stealing from the man who had been left in the boat, others of them might be taking the same liberty with the property of our people who were on shore. But all agree that there was no premeditated plan of bloodshed; and that if the thefts had not been too hastily resented, no mischief would have happened.

With regard to the boat, some said, that it had been pulled to pieces and burnt; while others asserted, that it had been carried off by a party of strangers.

Our party continued at Grass Cove till the evening, and then embarked to return to the ships. They had scarcely left the shore, when the wind began to blow violently at northwest, so that it was not without great difficulty that they could reach the ships, where some of the boats did not arrive till the next morning; and it was very fortunate



that they got on board then, for soon afterwards a perfect storm arose. Towards the evening, however, the wind veering to the east, brought on fair weather. On Tuesday the 18th Pedro and his whole family came to reside near us. The proper name of this chief was Matahouah; but some of captain Cook's people had given him the appellation of Pedro in a former voyage. On the 20th we had another storm, of less duration than the former, but more violent; in consequence of which, both our ships struck their yards and top-masts. These tempests are frequent here; and the nearer the shore, the more sensible are their effects.

On Friday the 21st, a tribe or family of about thirty persons came from the upper part of the Sound to visit us. Their chief was named Tomatongeanooranuc: he was about the age of forty-five, and had a frank, chearful countenance; and, indeed, the rest of his tribe were, upon the whole, the handsomest of all the New-Zealanders that captain Cook had ever seen. By this time upwards of two-thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's Sound had settled near us, numbers of whom daily resorted to the ships, and our encampment on shore; but the latter was most frequented, during the time when our people there were making seal blubber; for the savages were so fond of train oil, that they relished the very dregs of the casks, and skimmings of the kettle; and considered the pure stinking oil as a most delightful feast.

When we had procured a competent supply of hay, wood, and water, we struck our tents, and the next morning, which was the 24th, weighed out of the Cove. But the wind not being so fair as we could have wished, we were obliged to cast anchor again

near the  
sail, I  
the m  
two  
sent t  
Toma  
and to  
after t  
for th  
here,  
all dea  
two N  
that T  
many

Befo

ara, se  
us, an  
the cu  
noes w  
ed out  
that ch  
cution  
ther vi  
influen  
next m  
Omai,  
to ask  
the cab  
But, fe  
to put  
retired.  
ing tha  
strated  
if a man



near the Isle of Motuara. While we were getting under sail, Tomatongeaurooranuc, Matahouah, and many of the natives, came to take leave of us. These two chiefs having requested captain Cook to present them with some hogs and goats, he gave to Tomatongeaurooranuc two pigs, a boar and a sow; and to Matahouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promised not to destroy them. As for the animals, which captain Furneaux had left here, captain Cook was now told that they were all dead; but he was afterwards informed, by the two New-Zealand youths who went away with us, that Tiratou, a popular chief, had in his possession many cocks and hens, besides a sow.

Before we had been long at anchor near Motuara, several canoes, filled with natives, came toward us, and we carried on a brisk trade with them for the curiosities of this place. In one of these canoes was Kahoorā, whom Omai immediately pointed out to captain Cook, and solicited him to shoot that chief: he also threatened to be himself his executioner, if he should ever presume to pay us another visit. These menaces of Omai had so little influence upon Kahoorā, that he returned to us the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omai, having obtained captain Cook's permission to ask him to come on board, introduced him into the cabin, saying, 'There is Kahoorā, dispatch him.' But, fearing perhaps that he should be called upon to put his former threats in execution, he instantly retired. He soon, however, returned; and perceiving that the chief was unhurt, he earnestly remonstrated to captain Cook on the subject, saying, that if a man killed another in England, he was hanged

for it; but that Kahoora had killed ten, and therefore justly deserved death. These arguments, however plausible, had no weight with our commodore, who desired Omai to ask the New-Zealand chief, why he had destroyed captain Furneaux's people? Kahoora, confounded at this question, hung down his head, folded his arms, and seemed in expectation of immediate death: but, as soon as he was assured of safety, he became chearful. He appeared, however, unwilling to answer the question which had been put to him, till after repeated promises that no violence should be offered him. He then ventured to inform us, that one of the natives having brought a stone hatchet for the purpose of traffic, the person to whom it was offered took it, and refused either to return it, or give any thing in exchange; upon which the owner of it seized some bread by way of an equivalent; and this gave rise to the quarrel that ensued. He also mentioned, that he himself, during the disturbance, had a narrow escape; for a musquet was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by skulking behind the boat; and another man, who happened to stand close to him, was shot dead: upon which Kahoora attacked Mr Rowe, the officer who commanded the party, who defended himself with his hanger, with which he gave the chief a wound in the arm, till he was overpowered by superiority of numbers. Mr Burney, whom captain Furneaux dispatched next day with an armed party in search of his people who were missing, had, upon discovering the melancholy proofs of this catastrophe, fired several volleys among the natives who were still on the spot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human flesh. It was reasonable to suppose that

this  
it ap  
or e  
ple  
M  
that  
hoor  
them  
at th  
the c  
aston  
powe  
parti  
could  
escap  
him  
tioned  
ing u  
a por  
own l  
ber h  
token  
cour.  
he rep  
in the  
had a  
contin  
reason  
no mo  
men,  
but th  
cond  
of me  
Bef

this firing was not ineffectual; but upon inquiry, it appeared, that not a single person had been killed or even hurt, by the shot which Mr Burney's people had discharged.

Most of the natives we had met with, expected that captain Cook would take vengeance on Kahoorā for his concern in the massacre; and many of them not only wished it, but testified their surprise at the captain's forbearance and moderation. As the chief must have known this, it was a matter of astonishment that he so often put himself in the power of our commodore. His two last visits, in particular, were under such circumstances, that he could not have flattered himself with a prospect of escaping, had the captain been inclined to detain him: and yet, when his first fears, on being questioned, had subsided, so far was he from entertaining uneasy sensations, that, on seeing in the cabin a portrait of a New-Zealander, he desired that his own likeness might be taken, and sat till Mr Webber had finished his portrait, without the smallest token of impatience. Captain Cook admired his courage, and was pleased with the confidence which he reposed in him; for he placed his whole safety in the uniform declarations of the captain, that he had always been a friend to the natives, and would continue in the same sentiments till they gave him reason to behave otherwise: that he should think no more of their barbarous treatment of his countrymen, as that transaction had happened long ago; but that if they should ever venture to make a second attempt of that kind, they might rest assured of meeting with an adequate punishment.

Before our arrival in New-Zealand, Omai had

expressed a desire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He soon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination, for a youth named Taweharooa, the only son of a deceased chief, offered to accompany him, and took up his residence on board. Captain Cook caused it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with us he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect. The day before we quitted the Cove, Tiritoutou, his mother, came to receive her last present from Omai; and the same evening she and her son parted, with all the marks of the tenderest affection. But she said she would weep no more, and faithfully kept her word; for the next morning, when she returned to take her last farewell of Taweharooa, she was quite cheerful all the time she remained on board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy of about ten years of age accompanied Taweharooa as a servant; his name was Kokoa. He was presented to captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with such indifference, as to strip him, and leave him entirely naked. The captain having in vain endeavoured to convince these people of the great improbability of these youths ever returning home, at length consented to their going.

The inhabitants of New-Zealand seem to live under continual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; most of their tribes having, as they think, sustained injuries from some other tribe, which they are ever eager to revenge: and it is no improbable, that the desire of a good meal is frequently a great incitement. They generally steal upon the adverse party in the night, and if

they  
dom  
tion,  
when  
they  
off as  
them  
lity.  
to ex  
steal c  
attack  
never  
the va  
From  
tructiv  
derive  
that h  
these  
vigilar  
depend  
the son  
enemi  
the son  
those  
who d  
the gb  
ther t  
their l  
vented  
answer  
horren  
The  
is to c  
they h



they chance to find them unguarded, which is seldom the case, they kill every one without distinction, without sparing even the women and children; when they have completed the inhuman massacre, they either gorge themselves on the spot, or carry off as many dead bodies as they can, and feast on them at home, with the most horrid acts of brutality. If they are discovered before they have time to execute their sanguinary purpose, they usually steal off again, and sometimes they are pursued and attacked by the adverse party, in their turn. They never give quarter, or take prisoners, so that the vanquished must trust to flight alone for safety. From this state of perpetual hostility, and this destructive mode of carrying it on, a New-Zealander derives such habitual vigilance and circumspection, that he is scarce ever off his guard: and, indeed, these people have the most powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preservation of both soul and body depends on it: for it is a part of their creed, that the soul of the man whose flesh is devoured by his enemies, is condemned to an incessant fire; while the soul of him whose body has been rescued from those that slew him, as well as the souls of those who die a natural death, ascend to the mansions of the gods. Captain Cook having asked them, whether they eat the flesh of such friends as had lost their lives in war, but whose bodies had been prevented from falling into the enemy's hands, they answered in the negative, and expressed their abhorrence of the idea.

Their ordinary method of disposing of their dead is to commit their bodies to the earth; but when they have more of their slain enemies than they can



conveniently eat, they throw them into the sea. There are no *morais*, or other places of public worship among them; but they have priests, who pray to the gods for the success of their temporal affairs. The principles of their religion, of which we know but little, are strongly instilled into them from their infancy. We observed a remarkable instance of this in a youth, who abstained from eating during the greatest part of the day, merely on account of his hair being cut, though every method was practised that could induce him to change his resolution. He said that the *catooa*, or deity, would kill him if he eat any thing on that day. Towards the evening, however, his religious scruples gave way to the importunate cravings of appetite, and he ate, though sparingly.

Notwithstanding the divided state in which these people live, travelling strangers, whose designs are honourable, are well received and entertained; but it is expected that they will remain no longer than their business requires. It is thus that a trade for green talc, which they called *paenamoo*, is carried on. They informed us, that none of this stone is to be found, except at a place which bears its name, near the head of Queen Charlotte's Sound. We were told many fabulous and improbable stories concerning this stone, one of which is, that it is originally a fish, which they strike with a gig in the water, and having tied a rope to it, drag it to the shore, to which they fasten it, and it afterwards hardens into a stone. As it is fished out of a large lake, it is probable that it may be brought from the mountains, and deposited in the water, by means of the torrents. This lake

is called  
the wa

The  
among  
two on  
riage  
ried, fi

The  
small  
make  
remark  
with m  
tion fo  
favouri  
cle abo  
with v

Taweik  
had eve  
its neig  
entirely  
put into  
awitte,  
the Sou  
us, that  
here, h  
who ha  
also me  
venera  
This d  
among  
tice as  
a kind  
tain gre  
Tawo

is called by the inhabitants *Tavai Poenamoo*, or the water of green talc.

The New-Zealanders have adopted polygamy among them; and it is common for one man to have two or three wives. The women are ripe for marriage at an early age; and those who are unmarried, find difficulty in procuring subsistence.

These people seem perfectly contented with the small degree of knowledge they possess, for they make no attempts to improve it. They are not remarkably curious, nor do new objects strike them with much surprise, for they scarce fix their attention for a moment. Omai, indeed, being a great favourite with them, would sometimes attract a circle about him; but they listened to his speeches with very little eagerness. On our enquiring of Taweharooa, how many ships, resembling ours, had ever arrived in Queen Charlotte's Sound, or in its neighbourhood, he gave us an account of one entirely unknown to us. This vessel, he said, had put into a harbour on the northwest coast of Teerawitte, a few years before captain Cook arrived in the Sound in the Endeavour. He further informed us, that the captain of her, during his continuance here, had cohabited with a female of the country, who had born him a son that was still living. He also mentioned, that this ship first introduced the venereal disease among the natives of New-Zealand. This dreadful disorder is now but too common among them. The only method they put in practice as a remedy, is to give the patient the use of a kind of hot bath, produced by the steam of certain green plants placed over hot stones.

Taweharooa's intelligence induced us to believe,

that a ship had really been at Teerawitte previous to captain Cook's arrival in the Endeavour, as it corresponded with what the captain had formerly heard; for, towards the latter end of 1773, some of the natives informed him of a ship's having put into a port on the coast of Teerawitte.

We had another piece of information from Taweiharooa, importing that there are here snakes and lizards of an enormous size. The latter were described by him as being eight feet long, and equal to a man's body in circumference. He said that they burrow in the ground; that they sometimes seize and devour men, and are killed by making fires at the mouths of their holes. We could not misunderstand him with respect to the animal; for, in order to show us what he meant, he drew with his own hand, very good representations of a lizard and snake on a piece of paper.

The longitude of Ship Cove by lunar observations, is  $174^{\circ} 25' 15''$  east; its latitude  $41^{\circ} 6'$  south.

Though much has been said concerning this country and its inhabitants, in the accounts of captain Cook's two former voyages, yet the remarks of Mr Anderson, being the result of accurate observations, must not be considered as altogether superfluous. They are as follow:

About Queen Charlotte's Sound the land is uncommonly mountainous; rising immediately from the sea into large hills. At remote distances are vallies, terminating each towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach, behind which are flat places, where the natives usually build their huts. This situation is the more convenient, as a

brook  
empti

Th  
are c  
which  
the se  
at oth  
which  
ral, a

Th  
suffici  
hills,  
ed for  
comm  
the ad  
nature

Thi  
doubt  
ature  
ing to  
so war  
therme

seems  
the mo  
mercur  
same t  
of sum

till pus  
Tho  
someti  
is neve  
In sho  
on eart  
suppos

brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itself into the sea.

The bases of these mountains, towards the shore, are constituted of a brittle yellowish sandy stone, which acquires a bluish cast where it is laved by the sea. At some places it runs in horizontal, and, at others, in oblique strata. The mould or soil by which it is covered resembles marl, and is, in general, a foot or two in thickness.

The luxuriant growth of the productions here, sufficiently indicates the quality of the soil. The hills, except a few towards the sea, are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with such uncommon vigour, as to afford an august prospect to the admirers of the sublime and beautiful works of nature.

This extraordinary strength in vegetation is, doubtless, greatly assisted by the agreeable temperature of the climate; for, at this time, tho' answering to our month of August, the weather was not so warm as to be disagreeable; nor did it raise the thermometer higher than  $66^{\circ}$ . The winter also seems equally mild with respect to cold; for, in the month which corresponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than  $48^{\circ}$ , the trees at the same time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of summer. It is supposed their foliage remains till pushed off in spring by the succeeding leaves.

Though the weather is generally good, it is sometimes windy, with heavy rain; which however is never excessive, and does not last above a day. In short, this would be one of the finest countries on earth, were it not so extremely hilly; which, supposing the woods to be cleared away, would



leave it less proper for pasturage than flat land; and infinitely less so for cultivation, which could never be effected here by the plough.

The large trees on the hills are principally of two sorts. One of them, of the size of our largest firs, grows nearly after their manner. This supplied the place of spruce in making beer; which we did, with a decoction of its leaves fermented with sugar or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to American spruce-beer. The other sort of tree is like a maple, and often grows very large, but is fit only for fuel; the wood of that, and of the preceding, being too heavy for masts, or yards, &c.

A greater variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of these bear a kind of plum, of the size of prunes; the one which is yellow, is called karraca, and the other which is black, is called maitao; but neither of them had a pleasant taste, though eaten both by our people and the natives.

On the eminences which jut out into the sea, grows a species of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almost like myrtle. We used the leaves of the philadelphus as tea, and found them an excellent substitute for the oriental sort.

A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almost every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were useful to us; and another that we used to call scurvy-grass. Both sorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill, for the people's breakfast, and with their pease-soup for dinner. Sometimes also they were used as sallad, or dressed as greens. In all which ways they are excellent;

and, to  
ply su  
ment.

The  
bind-v  
well; s  
willow  
bulrus  
knot-g  
but th  
have i

The  
in part  
ments  
flax is  
to any  
as stro  
someti  
or tul  
stalk.

It is  
and pla  
and oth  
thirty

The  
stock,  
would  
accoun  
climbin  
one pia  
serve se  
are larg  
parroqu  
cuckoo

VOL.



and, together with the fish with which we were amply supplied, they formed a most desirable refreshment.

The known kinds of plants to be found here are bind-weed, night-shade, nettles, a shrubby speedwell, sow-thistles, virgin's bower, vanelloc, French willow, euphorbia, crane's-bill, cud-weed, rushes, bulrushes, flax, all-heal, American night-shade, knot-grass, brambles, eye-bright, and groundsel; but the species of each are different from any we have in Europe.

There are a great number of other plants, but one in particular deserves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made from it. A fine silky flax is produced from it, superior in appearance to any thing we have in this country, and perhaps as strong. It grows in all places near the sea, and sometimes a considerable way up the hills in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowish flowers on a long stalk.

It is remarkable, that the greatest part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which and other seeds, Mr Anderson brought away about thirty different sorts.

The birds, of which there is a tolerable good stock, are almost entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood, and the climbing plants; yet any person, by continuing in one place, may shoot as many in a day as would serve seven or eight persons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with grey heads, green parrots, large wood-pigeons, and two sorts of cuckoos. A gross-beak, about the size of a thrust.

is frequent ; as is also a small green bird, which is almost the only musical one to be found here ; but his melody is so sweet, and his notes so varied, that any one would imagine himself surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds, when the little warbler is exerting himself. From this circumstance it was named the mocking-bird. There are also three or four sorts of smaller birds, and, among the rocks are found black sea-pies with red bills, and crested shags of a leaden colour. About the shore there are a few sea gulls, some blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and some sand-larks. A snipe was shot here, which differs but little from that of Europe.

Most of the fish we caught by the seine were elephant-fish, mullets, soles, and flounders ; but the natives supplied us with a sort of sea-bream, large conger-eels, and a fish of five or six pounds weight, called a mogge by the natives. With a hook and line we caught a blackish fish, called cole-fish by the seamen, but differing greatly from that of the same name in Europe. We also got a sort of small salmon, skate, gurnards, and nurses. The natives sometimes furnished us with hake, paracutas, parrot-fish, a sort of mackarel, and leather-jackets ; beside another, which is extremely scarce, of the figure of a dolphin, a black colour, and strong bony jaws. These, in general, are excellent to eat ; but the small salmon, cole-fish, and mogge, are superior to the others. Great quantities of excellent muscles inhabit among the rocks ; one sort of which exceeds a foot in length. Many cockles are found buried in the sand of the small beaches ; and, in some places, oysters, which, though very small, have

an ex  
limpet  
ful sea  
The  
cray-f

Inse

some  
small  
black  
whose  
fly, wh  
here, a  
toe.

three s

In t  
should  
cept a  
by the

The  
a green  
and orn  
is held  
enterta  
of its g  
they sa  
southw  
pieces  
vered w

The  
especia  
do they  
much c  
mounta  
that ki

an excellent flavour. There are also periwinkles, limpets, wilks, sea-eggs, star-fish, and some beautiful sea-ears, many of which are peculiar to the place. The natives also furnished us with some excellent cray-fish.

Insects here are not very numerous: we saw some butterflies, two sorts of dragon-flies, some small grasshoppers, several sorts of spiders, some black ants, and scorpion-flies innumerable, with whose chirping the woods resounded. The sand-fly, which is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almost as disagreeable as the musquitoe. The only reptiles we saw here were two or three sorts of inoffensive lizards.

In this extensive land it is remarkable that there should not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and kind of fox-dog, which is kept by the natives as a domestic animal.

They have not any mineral deserving notice, but a green jasper or serpent-stone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made: This is held in high estimation among them; and they entertain some superstitious notions about the mode of its generation, which we could not comprehend; they say it is taken from a large river far to the southward; it is disposed in the earth in detached pieces like flints, and, like them, the edges are covered with a whitish crust.

The natives, in general, are not so well formed, especially about the limbs, as the Europeans, nor do they exceed them in stature. Their sitting so much on their hams, and being deprived, by the mountainous disposition of the country, of using that kind of exercise which would render the body

straight and well proportioned, is probably the occasion of the want of due proportion. Many of them, indeed, are perfectly formed, and some are very large-boned and muscular; but very few among them were corpulent.

Their features are various, some resembling Europeans, and their colour is of different casts, from a deepish black to an olive or yellowish tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noses, (though not flat) large towards the point. An aquiline nose was not to be seen among them: their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly broad, white, and regular. The hair, in general, is black, strong and straight; it is commonly cut short on the hinder part, and the rest tied on the crown of the head. Some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a sort that is naturally disposed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but, in many of the men, it has a serious or sullen cast. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not distinguished by peculiar graces either of form or features.

Both sexes are clothed alike; they have a garment made of silky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length, and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. Two corners of this garment pass over the shoulders, and they fasten it on the breast with that which covers the body: it is again fastened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog skin or large feathers. Many of them wear coats over this garment, extending from the shoulders to the heels.

The  
ty of  
nufac  
the s  
the m  
in thi  
from  
not pr

Th  
of bon  
skin o  
ears sl  
or bits  
nose l  
ornam  
passed  
was oc

Ma  
of a bl  
tain w  
a mark  
marked  
besmea  
dish p  
shark's  
of them  
feathers  
waist w

The  
someti  
panies  
are in  
built co  
was bu



The most common covering, however, is a quantity of the sedge plant above mentioned, badly manufactured, fastened to a string, and thrown over the shoulders whence it falls down on all sides to the middle of the thighs. When they sat down in this habit, they could hardly be distinguished from large grey stones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings.

They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl shell, and the inner skin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears slit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jasper, or bits of cloth. Some have the sceptum of the nose bored in its lower part, but we never saw any ornament wore in that part; though a twig was passed through it by one of them, to show that it was occasionally used for that purpose.

Many are stained in the face with curious figures of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular distinction: the women are marked only on their lips and chins; and both sexes besmear their heads and faces with a greasy reddish paint. The women also wear necklaces of shark's teeth, or bunches of long beads; and a few of them have small triangular aprons, adorned with feathers or pieces of pearl shells, fastened about the waist with a double or treble set of cords.

They live in the small coves already mentioned, sometimes in single families and sometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general most miserable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The best we saw was built in the manner of one of our country barns,

and was about six feet in height, fifteen in breadth, and thirty-three in length. The inside was strong and regular, well fastened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole serving as a door to creep out at, and another considerably smaller, seemingly for the purpose of letting out the smoke. This, however, ought to be considered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not of half the size, and seldom are more than four feet in height.

They have no other furniture than a few small bags or baskets, in which they deposit their fishing hooks and other trifles. They sit down in the middle round a small fire, and probably sleep in the same situation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day.

Fishing is their principal support, in which they use different kinds of nets, or wooden fish-hooks pointed with bone; but made in so extraordinary a manner, that it appears astonishing how they can answer such a purpose.

Their boats consist of planks raised upon each other, and fastened with strong withes. Many of them are fifty feet long. Sometimes they fasten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe: they frequently carry upwards of thirty men, and have a large head, ingeniously carved and painted, which seems intended to represent a man enraged. Their paddles are narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their sail, which is very little used, is a mat formed into a triangular shape.

They dress their fish by roasting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boil-

ing.  
large f  
when  
substanc  
smaller  
bread,  
gether  
go far

Wh  
sea, m  
fish.  
pengu  
vary th  
are also  
ly on t  
are mo

The  
persons  
from  
from th  
are, ple  
someti  
and bl  
When  
the lan  
equal  
Dieme  
these p  
ness, c

In p  
uncivil  
without  
every t  
clothin

ing. It is thus they also dress the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpose; when dressed, they split it, and find a gelatinous substance within, somewhat like sago powder. The smaller fern-root seems to be their substitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with great quantities of dried fish, when they go far from their habitations.

When the weather will not suffer them to go to sea, muscles and sea-eels supply the place of other fish. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and shags, which enable them to vary their diet. Considerable numbers of their dogs are also bred for food; but they depend principally on the sea for their subsistence, by which they are most bountifully supplied.

They are as filthy in their feeding as in their persons, which often emit a very offensive effluvia, from the quantity of grease about them, and from their never washing their clothes: their heads are plentifully stocked with vermin, which they sometimes eat. Large quantities of sting train oil and blubber of seals they would eagerly devour. When on board the ships, they not only emptied the lamps but actually swallowed the cotton with equal voracity. Though the inhabitants of Van Diemen's Land would not even taste our bread, these people devoured it with the greatest eagerness, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

In point of ingenuity they are not behind any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances: for, without the assistance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, clothing, and warlike weapons, with neatness,

strength, and convenience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the serpent-stone or jasper; their chisel and gouge are furnished from the same material, though they are sometimes composed of black solid stone. Carving, however, is their masterpiece, which appears upon the most trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only display much design, but execution. Their cordage for fishing-lines is not inferior to that of this country, and their nets are equally good. A shell, a bit of flint, or jasper, is their substitute for a knife, and a shark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a saw made of some jagged fishes teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved; but this is used for no other purpose than to cut up the bodies of those whom they kill in battle.

Though no people are more ready to resent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being insolent, when they apprehend there is no danger of punishment; whence it may be concluded that their eagerness to resent injuries is rather an effect of a furious disposition than genuine bravery. They are naturally mistrustful and suspicious, for such as are strangers never venture immediately to visit our ships but keep at a small distance in their boats, observing our motions, and hesitating whether they should risk their safety with us. They are to the last degree dishonest, and steal every thing within their reach, if they suppose they can escape detection; and, in trading, they seem inclined to take every possible advantage; for they never trust an article out of their hands for examination, and seem high-

pleas  
gain.

Su  
consi  
dinat  
of tra  
yond  
time,  
who  
duct

Th  
for w  
their  
using  
halber  
five to  
pointe  
of an  
stone,  
dence  
in len  
and b

Be  
ing th  
selves  
the m  
and m  
this s  
cruel,  
mang  
fectly  
roastin  
pleasu

It



pleased if they have over-reached you in a bargain.

Such conduct indeed is not surprising, when it is considered that there appears to be but little subordination, and few, if any, laws for the punishment of transgressors. No man's authority extends beyond his own family; and when they join, at any time, for mutual defence or safety, those among them who are most eminent for valour and prudent conduct are directors.

Their public contentions are almost perpetual, for war is their principal profession, as appears from their number of weapons, and their dexterity in using them. Their arms are spears, patoos, and halberts, and sometimes stones. The first are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The patoo is about eighteen inches long, of an elliptical shape, with a handle made of wood, stone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependence in battle. The halbert is about five or six feet in length, tapering at one end with a carved head, and broad or flat, with sharp edges, at the other.

Before the onset, they join in a war song, keeping the exactest time; and, by degrees, work themselves into a kind of frantic fury, accompanied with the most horrid distortions of their tongues, eyes and mouths, in order to deter their enemies. To this succeeds a circumstance that is most horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies; and, after roasting them, devouring their flesh with peculiar pleasure and satisfaction.

It might naturally be supposed, that those who

could be capable of such excess of cruelty, must be totally destitute of every humane feeling; and yet they lament the loss of their friends in a manner the most tender and affectionate. Both men and women, upon the death of their relations or friends, bewail them with the most miserable cries; at the same time cutting large gashes in their cheeks and foreheads, with shells, or pieces of flint, till the blood flows copiously and mixes with their tears. They also carve a resemblance of a human figure, and hang it about their necks, as a memorial of those who were dear to them. They also perform the ceremony of lamenting and cutting for joy, at the return of a friend who has been some time absent.

The practices of the fathers, whether good or bad, their children are, at an early age, instructed in; so that you find a child of either sex, of the age of nine or ten years, able to imitate the frightful motions and gestures of the men. They also sing, and with some degree of melody, the traditions and actions of their fore-fathers, with which they are immoderately delighted, and pass much of their time in these amusements, accompanied sometimes with a kind of flute.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable. Whatever qualities are requisite to make a language musical, obtain to a considerable degree in this, if we may judge from the melody of their songs. It is not, indeed, so comprehensive as our European languages, which owe their perfection to long and gradual improvement.

Behav  
Man  
vion  
gees  
And  
rece  
his  
part  
Sing  
Grot  
Isles  
thiev  
Expe  
Islan  
Engl  
Poul  
ing t  
ment  
guag

IN t  
th  
Straits.

A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
PACIFIC OCEAN.

---

BOOK II.

CONTENTS.

Behaviour of the two New-Zealand Youths—The Island of Mangeea with its Inhabitants described—Visit and behaviour of Mourooa—Disposition and Manners of the Mangeeans—Wateeoop discovered—Mess. Gore, Burney, and Anderson, with Omai, sent on shore—Account of their reception—Omai's meeting and astonishing adventure with his Countrymen—Remarks concerning Wateeoop—Departure from it—Otakootaia or Wenoba-ette visited—Singularity in the natives of Hervey's Island—Submarine Grotto at Palmerston's Island—Arrival at the Friendly Isles—Amiable character of the Natives—Propensity to thieving—Of their persons—Transactions with them—Expedient to prevent their depredations—Opinions of the Islanders of a Volcano—Entertainments exhibited by the English and Natives—Mode of Shaving, &c.—Visit of Poulaho, the King—Poulaho's inanimate Viceroy—Offering to deprecate death—Mourning Ceremonies—Sentiments concerning the Soul—Future State—Their Language, &c. &c.

**I**N the morning of the 25th of Febrnary we left the Sound, and made sail through Cook's Straits. On the 27th, Cape Palliser, bearing west

about seven leagues distant, we had a fine gale, and steered towards the northeast. As soon as we had lost sight of land, our two young New-Zealanders heartily repented of the adventurous step they had taken. Though we endeavoured as far as lay in our power to soothe them, they wept, both in public and private; and gave vent to their sorrows in a kind of song, which seemed to express their praises of their country and people, from which they were now, in all probability, to be forever separated. They continued in this state for several days, till, at length, the agitation of their minds began to subside, and their sea-sickness, which had aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became less frequent; their native country, their kindred and friends, were gradually forgotten, and they appeared to be firmly attached to us.

On the 28th at noon, being in the latitude of  $41^{\circ} 17'$  south, and in the longitude of  $177^{\circ} 17'$  east, we tacked about, and stood to the southeast, with a gentle breeze at east-northeast, which afterwards veered to northeast, in which point the wind remained two days, sometimes blowing a fresh gale with squalls and rain. On the 2d of March it shifted to northwest, and afterwards to southwest, between which point and the north it continued to blow, sometimes very moderately, and at others a strong gale. With this wind we steered northeast by east and east, with all the sail we could carry, till Tuesday the 11th, when it veered to northeast and southeast; we then stood to the north and the southeast, as the wind would permit, till the 16th; when, having a gale from the north, we stood to the east. The next day we proceeded to the northeast; but, as

the v  
east,  
cours  
more  
out th  
dore  
that  
to the  
cipal  
on ou  
Socie  
We  
for a  
most  
run w  
suppo  
sional  
longit  
which  
vered  
standi  
signal  
small  
it was  
next  
west  
ing to  
leaving  
who so  
of the  
shouts.  
Upo  
many  
by the  
they we



the wind frequently veered to east and east north-east, we often made no better than a northerly course. The hopes, however, of the wind coming more southerly, or from the westward, a little without the tropic of Capricorn, encouraged the commodore to keep this course. It was indeed necessary that we should run all hazards, as our proceeding to the north this summer, in prosecution of the principal object of the expedition, entirely depended on our having a quick passage to Otaheite, or the Society Isles.

We crossed the Tropic on the 27th, the wind, for a considerable time before, having remained almost invariably fixed at east southeast. In all this run we observed nothing that could induce us to suppose we had sailed near any land, except occasionally a tropic bird. In the latitude of  $34^{\circ} 20'$  longitude  $199^{\circ}$ , we passed the trunk of a tree, which appeared much weather-beaten, and was covered with barnacles. On the 29th, as we were standing to the northeast, the Discovery made the signal of seeing land. We soon found it to be a small island, and stood for it till the evening; when it was at the distance of two or three leagues. The next morning, at day-break, we bore up for the west side of the island, and saw several people wading to the reef, where, as they observed the ship leaving them quickly, they remained. But others, who soon appeared, followed her course; and some of them assembled in small bodies, making great shouts.

Upon our nearer approach to the shore, we saw many of the natives running along the beach, and, by the assistance of our glasses, could perceive that they were armed with long spears and clubs, which

they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or, as some of us supposed, with invitations to land. Most of them were naked, except having a kind of girdle, which was brought up between their thighs; but some of them wore about their shoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, striped, or chequered; and almost all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in some degree resembling a turban. They were of a tawny complexion, robust, and about the middle size.

At the same time a small canoe was launched from the farther end of the beach; and, a man getting into it, put off as with a view to reach the ship. On this the captain brought too, that he might receive the visit; but the man's resolution failing, he soon returned towards the beach, where, after some time, another man joined him in the canoe; and then they both paddled towards the ship. They stopt short, however, as if afraid to approach, until Omai, who addressed them in the Otaheite language, in some measure quieted their apprehensions. They then came near enough to take some beads and nails, which were tied to a piece of wood, and thrown into the canoe. They seemed afraid to touch these things, and put the piece of wood aside, without untying them. This, however, might arise from superstition; for Omai said, that when they saw us offering them presents, they asked something for their *Eatooa*, or god. He also, perhaps improperly, put the question to them, whether they ever eat any human flesh? which they answered in the negative, with a mixture of indignation and abhorrence. One of them, whose name was Mourooa, being asked how he came by a scar on his forehead,

answe  
had a  
which  
came  
of a r  
on bo  
had gi  
ing th  
the na  
was c  
name.  
*Mange*  
*nai, na*  
Mou  
tures v  
no less  
which  
humou  
serious  
vout ai  
which  
protect  
ly of t  
souther  
handso  
of a je  
head w  
were a  
in the s  
ocean.  
tives at  
heads w  
heite.  
grassy s

answered, that it was in consequence of a wound he had got in fighting with the people of an island which lies towards the northeast, who sometimes came to invade them. They afterwards took hold of a rope. Still, however, they would not venture on board; but told Omai, that their countrymen had given them this caution, at the same time directing them to inquire, whence the ship came, and the name of the captain. Their chief, they said, was called Orooaeka. Upon our inquiring the name of the island, they told us it was *Mangya*, or *Mangeea*, to which they sometimes added *nooe*, *nai*, *naiwa*.

Monrooa was lusty, but not very tall; his features were agreeable, and his disposition seemingly no less so; for he made several droll gesticulations, which indicated both good nature, and a share of humour. He also made others, which seemed of a serious kind, and repeated some words with a devout air, before he ventured to lay hold of the rope; which was probably to recommend himself to the protection of some divinity. His colour was nearly of the same cast with that common to the more southern Europeans. The other man was not so handsome. Both of them had strong, straight hair, of a jet colour, tied together on the crown of the head with a bit of cloth. They wore girdles which were a substance made from the *morus papyrifera*, in the same manner as at the other islands in this ocean. It was glazed like the sort used by the natives at the Friendly Islands; but the cloth on their heads was white, like that which was found at Otaheite. They had on a kind of sandals, made of a grassy substance interwoven, and probably intend-

ed to defend their feet against the rough coral rock. Their beards were long; and the inside of their arms, from the shoulders to the elbow, and some other parts, were punctured or *tattooed*, after the manner of the natives of almost all the other islands in the South Sea. The lobe of the ears was pierced, or rather slit, and to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads, which had been given to them; and the same person had two polished pearl shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted, hanging about his neck. The canoe they came in was not above ten feet long, and very narrow, but both strong and neatly made. The fore part had a flat board fastened over it, and projecting out to prevent the sea getting in or plunging. The lower part was of white wood; but the upper part was black, and their paddles were made of wood of the same colour; these were broad at one end, and blunted, and about three feet long. It had an upright stern, five feet high, which terminated at the top in a kind of fork. They paddled, indifferently, either end of the canoe forward.

As soon as the ships were in a proper station, captain Cook sent out two boats to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. In one of them he went himself, and had no sooner put off from the ship than the two men in the canoe paddled towards his boat; and when they were come along side, Mouroua, without hesitation, stepped into her. Omai, who was with the captain, was desired to inquire of the islander where we could land; upon which he directed us to two places. But we soon observed, with regret, that the attempt at either

place  
less at  
were v  
age, a  
length  
forty t  
coral.

Wh  
geea, t  
armed.  
with c  
warlike  
mandee  
ed, we  
sequen  
he was  
of them  
shore t  
out rese  
keeping  
pilferin  
At leng  
ships, t  
not wit  
nied the  
cattle a  
not stri  
haps, be  
to allow  
very un  
and the  
on board  
towards  
happeni



place was impracticable, on account of the surf, unless at the risque of having our boats destroyed. Nor were we more successful in our search for anchorage, as we could find no bottom till within a cable's length of the breakers, where we met with from forty to twenty fathoms depth, over sharp rocks of coral.

While we thus reconnoitred the shore of Mangaea, the natives thronged down upon the reef, all armed. Mourooa, who still remained in the boat with captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this watlike appearance deterred us from landing, commanded them to retire. As many of them complied, we imagined that he was a person of some consequence: indeed, if we did not misunderstand him, he was brother to the king of the island. Several of them, instigated by curiosity, swam from the shore to the boats, and came on board them without reserve. We even found some difficulty in keeping them out, and could scarce prevent their pilfering whatever they could lay their hands upon. At length, when they observed us returning to the ships, they all left us except Mourooa, who, though not without manifest indications of fear, accompanied the commodore on board the Resolution. The cattle and other new objects that he saw there did not strike him with much surprise; his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. He seemed very uneasy, and gave us but little new intelligence; and therefore, after he had continued a short time on board, captain Cook ordered a boat to carry him towards the land. In his way out of the cabin, happening to stumble over one of the goats, he

stopped, looked at the animal, and asked Omai what bird it was ; but not receiving an immediate answer from him, he put the same question to some of the people who were upon deck. The boat having conveyed him near the surf, he leaped into the water, and swam ashore. His countrymen, eager to learn from him what he had seen, flocked round him as soon as he had landed ; in which situation they remained, when we lost sight of them. We hoisted in the boat as soon as she returned, and made sail to the northward. Thus we were obliged to leave this fine island unvisited, which seemed capable of supplying all our necessities. It is situated in the longitude of  $201^{\circ} 53'$  east, and in the latitude of  $21^{\circ} 57'$  south.

Those parts of the coast of Mangeea which fell under our observation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, against which a heavy surf is continually breaking. The island is about five leagues in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty equal height, may be seen in clear weather at the distance of ten leagues. In the interior parts it rises into small hills, whence there is an easy descent to the shore, which, in the southwest part, is steep, though not very high, and has several excavations made by the dashing of the waves against a brownish sandy stone, of which it consists. The descent here abounds with trees of a deep green, which seem to be all of one sort, except nearest the shore, where we observed numbers of that species of *dracæna* found in the woods of New-Zealand. The shore, on the northwest part, terminates in a sandy beach, beyond which the land is broken into small chasms, and has a broad border of trees which re-

semble  
trees w  
some o  
cocoa-  
a high  
other p  
thing l  
lour.  
appear  
made a

The  
well fe  
of pro  
great a  
us, tha  
had he  
plantai  
we obs  
birds, a

The  
that of  
guttura  
heite a  
sons ;  
corresp  
for the  
acquain  
practise  
had lik  
milar n  
an opp  
we obs  
its mod  
of Ota

semble tall willows. Farther up, on the ascent, the trees were of the deep green above mentioned, which some of us imagined to be the rima, intermixed with cocoa-palms, and a few other sorts. Some trees of a higher sort were thinly scattered on the hills, the other parts of which were either covered with something like fern, or were bare, and of a reddish colour. The island, upon the whole, has a pleasing appearance, and might, by proper cultivation, be made a very beautiful spot.

The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that such articles of provision as the island produces are found in great abundance. Our friend Monroca informed us, that they had no hogs nor dogs, though they had heard of both those animals; but that they had plantains, taro, and bread-fruit. The only birds we observed, were some terns, noddies, white egg-birds, and one white heron.

The language of the Mangeeans is a dialect of that of Otaheite; but their pronounciation is more guttural. They resemble the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and their general disposition also seems to correspond with that of the first-mentioned people; for they are not only lively and chearful, but are acquainted with all the lascivious gesticulations practised by the Otaheiteans in their dances. We had likewise reason to suppose that they have similar methods of living: for, though we had not an opportunity of seeing many of their habitations, we observed one house near the beach, which, in its mode of construction, differed little from those of Otaheite. It appeared to be seven or eight feet

high, and about thirty in length, with an open end, which represented an ellipse, or oval, transversely divided. It was pleasantly situate in a grove. These people salute strangers by joining noses, and taking the hand of the person whom they accost, which they rub with some force upon their mouth and nose. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaos, New-Philippine, or rather Caroline Islands, though at the distance of near 1500 leagues from Mangeea, have a similar method of salutation.

We quitted Mangeea in the afternoon of the 30th of March, and proceeding on a northerly course, we again discovered land, on the 31st, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. The next morning we were abreast of its north end, within four leagues of it. It now appeared to us to be an island nearly of the same extent with that which we had just left. Another island, much smaller, was also descried right a-head. Though we could soon have reached this, we preferred the larger one, as being most likely to furnish food for the cattle. We therefore made sail to it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, we were still about two leagues to leeward at eight o'clock the succeeding morning. The commodore, soon after, dispatched three armed boats, under the command of Mr Gore, his first lieutenant, in search of a landing-place and anchoring-ground, Meanwhlie we plied up under the island with the ships. As our boats were putting off, we saw several canoes coming from the shore, which repaired first to the Discovery, as that ship was the nearest. Not long after, three of these canoes, each conducted by one man, came

along-si  
parrow,  
is flat a  
about f  
some k  
us some  
asked f  
by way  
of barte  
suasion,  
followe  
fectly a  
ter he  
noe, br  
captain  
red clo  
ed by C  
the king  
noe, co  
wards u  
some w  
them fir  
Having  
long-sid  
tain Co  
cocoa-n  
captain  
by the p  
his com  
hes  
cabin, a  
Though  
thing co  
to ventu



along-side of the Resolution. They are long and narrow, and are supported by out-riggers: the head is flat above, but prow-like below; and the stern is about four feet high. We bestowed on our visitors some knives, beads, and other trifles; and they gave us some cocoa-nuts, in consequence of our having asked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they seemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of them, after a little persuasion, came on board; and the other two soon followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at ease, and free from all apprehension. After the departure, a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a present to captain Cook, who gave him in return, a piece of red cloth and an axe. We were afterwards informed by Omai, that this present had been sent from the king of the island. Soon after a double canoe, containing twelve of the islanders, came towards us. On approaching the ship, they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them first giving the word before each repetition. Having finished this solemn chant, they came along-side and asked for the chief. As soon as captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and some cocoa-nuts were conveyed into the ship; and the captain was also presented with a piece of matting, by the principal person in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on board.

These new visitors were introduced into the cabin, and conducted to other parts of the ship. Though some objects seemed to surprise them, nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horses, of whose na-

ture they could form no conception. As for the sheep and goats, they gave us to understand that they knew them to be birds. It is a matter of astonishment that human ignorance could ever make so ridiculous a mistake, as there is not the smallest resemblance between any winged animal and a sheep or goat. But these people seemed unacquainted with the existence of any other land animals, than hogs, dogs, and birds; and as they saw that our goats and sheep were very different from the two former, they accordingly inferred that they must belong to the latter class, in which they knew there was a great variety of species. Though the commodore bestowed on his new friend what he supposed would be the most acceptable present, yet he seemed somewhat disappointed. The captain was afterwards informed that he eagerly wished to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this island was destitute, though the natives knew that the race existed in other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a similar present, with the same view, from another man, who was equally disappointed in his expectations.

The islanders whom we had seen in those canoes were generally of the middle stature, and not unlike the Mageecans. Their hair either flowed loosely over their shoulders, or was tied on the crown of the head; and though in some it was frizzled, yet that, as well as the straight sort, was long. Some of the young men were handsome. Like the inhabitants of Mangeea, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by

way o  
with r  
shade.  
tattooed  
upon t  
they w  
they ha  
were fr  
very fr  
Lieut  
the aft  
he had  
out bei  
ride in  
bounde  
continu  
But as  
and as  
Mr Go  
vailed u  
surf, su  
we had  
was of  
modore  
morning  
canoes  
rected  
were in  
hog, fo  
us, refu  
of exch  
board h  
nuisance  
ved to p

way of ornament, a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the nightshade. Many of them were curiously marked or tattooed from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs; which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and they had a kind of sandals on their feet. They were frank and cheerful in their deportment, and very friendly and good-natured.

Lieutenant Gore returned from his excursion in the afternoon, and informed Captain Cook that he had examined the west side of the island, without being able to find a place where the ships could ride in safety, or a boat could land, the shore being bounded by a steep coral rock, against which a continual surf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants seemed extremely friendly, and as desirous of our landing as we ourselves were, Mr Gore was of opinion that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats, beyond the surf, such articles as we were most in need of. As we had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of small consideration; and therefore the Commodore resolved to try the experiment the next morning. We observed, soon after day-break, some canoes coming towards the ships; one of which directed its course towards the Resolution. There were in it some cocoa-nuts and plantains, and a hog, for which the natives demanded a dog from us, refusing every other thing we offered by way of exchange. Though one of our gentlemen on board had a dog and a bitch, which were great nuisances in the ship, and which might have served to propagate a race of so useful an animal in this

island, yet he could not be prevailed upon to part with them. However, to gratify these people, Omai gave them a favourite dog he had brought from Great Britain; with which acquisition they were highly pleased.

The same morning, which was the 3d of April, Captain Cook detached Mr Gore with three boats, to make trial of the experiment which that officer had proposed. Two of the natives, who had been on board, accompanied him; and Omai served as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off, and the wind being inconsiderable, it was twelve o'clock before we could work up to it. We then perceived our three boats just without the surf, and an amazing number of the islanders on the shore a-breast of them. Concluding from this, that Lieutenant Gore, and others of our people, had landed, we were impatient to know the event. With a view of observing their motions, and being ready to afford them such assistance as they might occasionally require, the Commodore kept as near the shore as was consistent with prudence. He was convinced, however, that the reef was a very effectual barrier between us and our friends who had landed, and put them completely out of the reach of our protection. But the natives, in all probability, were not so sensible of this circumstance as we were. Some of them, now and then, brought a few cocoa-nuts to the ships, and exchanged them for whatever was offered them. These occasional visits diminished the Captain's solicitude about our people who had landed; for, though we could procure no intelligence from our visitors, yet their venturing on board seem-

ed to  
made  
in them  
the sat  
our pe  
Mr A  
only p  
of the  
dore by  
transac  
include  
inhabit

The  
great n  
came t  
yards f  
off, bri  
gave th  
sious o  
off; an  
dence,  
unarme  
well or  
' Ou  
ing atte  
Burney  
safely u  
each of  
us in w  
where  
green b  
and salu  
Gore an  
noe.



ed to imply, that their countrymen on shore had made no improper use of the confidence reposed in them. At length, towards the evening, we had the satisfaction of seeing the boats return. When our people got on board, we found that Mr Gore, Mr Anderson, Mr Burney, and Omai, were the only persons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to the Commodore by Mr Gore. Mr Anderson's account of their transactions, which was very circumstantial, and included some observations on the island and its inhabitants, was to the following purport:

They rowed towards a sandy beach, where a great number of the natives had assembled, and came to an anchor at the distance of a hundred yards from the reef. Several of the islanders swam off, bringing cocoa-nuts with them; and Omai gave them to understand that our people were desirous of landing. Soon after, two canoes came off; and to inspire the natives with a greater confidence, Mr Gore and his companions resolved to go unarmed, and to run the hazard of being treated well or ill.

'Our conductors,' says Mr Anderson, 'watching attentively the motions of the surf, landed Mr Burney and myself, who were in the first canoe, safely upon the reef. An islander took hold of each of us, obviously with an intention to support us in walking over the rugged rock, to the beach, where several of the others met us, holding the green boughs of a species of *mimosa* in their hands, and saluted us by joining their noses to ours. Mr Gore and Omai were landed from the second canoe.'

' A great crowd flocked with eager curiosity to look at us; and would have prevented our proceeding, had not some, who seemed to have authority, dealt blows, with little distinction, among them to keep them off. We were then led up an avenue of cocoa-palms; and soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs, which they hold on their shoulders much in the same manner as we rest a musquet. After walking a little way among these, we found a person who seemed a chief, sitting on the ground cross-legged, cooling himself with a sort of triangular fan, made from a leaf of the cocoa-palm, with a polished handle of black wood, fixed to one corner. In his ears were large branches of beautiful red feathers, which pointed forward. But he had no other mark, or ornament, to distinguish him from the rest of the people; though they all obeyed him with the greatest alacrity. He either naturally had, or at this time put on, a serious, but not severe countenance; and we were desired to salute him as he sat, by some people, who seemed of consequence.

' We proceeded still amongst the men armed with clubs, and came to a second chief, who sat fanning himself, and ornamented as the first. He was remarkable for his size, and uncommon corpulence, though to appearance not above thirty. In the same manner, we were conducted to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former, and though not so fat as the second, was of a large size. He also was sitting, and adorned with red feathers; and after saluting him as we had done the others, he desired us both to sit down, which we were very

willing  
ing up,  
the vast

' In  
separate  
yards, a  
the chief  
which t  
sung by  
to see t  
paying  
be direc  
and me  
But the  
cing, an  
exercise  
very nin  
in a pro  
then als  
and son  
that it s  
care; a  
remony  
equalled  
rather s  
in ringl  
plexion  
what we  
but thei  
tenance  
desty, p  
but perh  
presente  
fiction,

willing to do, being pretty well fatigued with walking up, and with the excessive heat we felt, amongst the vast crowd that surrounded us.

‘ In a few minutes the people were ordered to separate ; and we saw, at the distance of thirty yards, about twenty young women, ornamented as the chiefs, with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and serious air, sung by them all. We got up, and went forward to see them ; they continued their dance, without paying the least attention to us. They seemed to be directed by a man who served as a prompter, and mentioned each motion they were to make. But they never changed the spot, as we do in dancing, and though their feet were not at rest, this exercise consisted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, at the same time holding their hands in a prone position near their face, and now and then also clapping them together. Their motions and song were performed in such exact concert, that it should seem they had been taught with great care ; and probably they were selected for this ceremony, as few of those whom we saw in the crowd equalled them in beauty. In general, they were rather stout than slender, with black hair flowing in ringlets down the neck, and of an olive complexion. Their features were rather fuller than what we allow to perfect beauties, and much alike ; but their eyes were of a deep black, and each countenance expressed a degree of complacency and modesty, peculiar to the sex in every part of the world ; but perhaps more conspicuous here, where nature presented us with her productions in the fullest perfection, unbiassed in sentiment by custom, or un-

restrained in manner by art. Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed. For, as their dress consisted only of a piece of glazed cloth, fastened about the waist, and scarcely reaching so low as the knees, in many we had an opportunity of observing every part. This dance was not finished, when we heard a noise, as if some horses had been galloping towards us; and, on looking aside, we saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired, as we suppose, to entertain us with the sight of their manner of fighting. This they now did, one party pursuing another who fled.

As we supposed the ceremony of being introduced to the chiefs was now at an end, we began to look about for Mr Gore and Omai: and tho' the crowd would hardly suffer us to move, we at length found them coming up, as much incommoded by the people as we had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs. Each of these expected a present; and Mr Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him from the ship, for that purpose. After this, making use of Omai as his interpreter, he informed the chiefs with what intention we had come on shore; but was given to understand that he must wait till the next day, and then he should have what was wanted.

They now seemed to take some pains to separate us from each other; and every one of us had his respective circle, to surround and gaze at him. For my part I was, at one time, above an hour apart from my friends; and when I told the chief with whom I sat, that I wanted to speak to Omai, he peremptorily refused my request. At

the same  
several t  
and whe  
ment, he  
now ente  
sign to d  
indeed, s  
make us  
it was, ne  
arded be  
situation,  
readily b  
and a sor  
by a wor  
the heat  
condescen  
of cloth,

Mr  
where I v  
and, to p  
founded,  
we were  
who told  
had left.  
taining t  
fancied,  
he had ob  
ground fo  
and he co  
that they  
ed by the  
so far as  
were gree  
that was



the same time, I found the people began to steal several trifling things which I had in my pocket; and when I complained to the chief of this treatment, he justified it. From these circumstances, I now entertained apprehensions, that they had a design to detain us amongst them. They did not, indeed, seem to be of a disposition so savage, as to make us anxious for the safety of our persons; but it was, nevertheless, vexing to think, we had hazarded being detained by their curiosity. In this situation, I asked for something to eat; and they readily brought me some cocca-nuts, bread-fruit, and a sort of sour pudding, which was presented by a woman. And on my complaining much of the heat occasioned by the crowd, the chief himself condescended to fan me, and gave me a small piece of cloth, which he had round his waist.

Mr Burney happening to come to the place where I was, I mentioned my suspicions to him; and, to put it to the test, whether they were well founded, we attempted to get to the beach. But we were stopt, when about half way, by some men, who told us, that we must go back to the place we had left. On coming up, we found Omai entertaining the same apprehensions. But he had, as he fancied, an additional reason for being afraid; for he had observed, that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating; and he could assign no other reason for this, than that they meant to roast, and eat us, as is practised by the natives of New-Zealand. Nay, he went so far as to ask them the question; at which they were greatly surprised, asking, in return, whether that was a custom with us? Mr Burney and I

were rather angry that they should be thus suspected by him ; there having as yet been no appearances, in their conduct towards us, of their being capable of such brutality.

‘ In this manner we were detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes together, and sometimes separated, but always in a crowd ; who, not satisfied with gazing at us, frequently desired us to uncover parts of our skin—the sight of which commonly produced a general murmur of admiration. At the same time they did not omit these opportunities of rifling our pockets ; and, at last, one of them snatched a small bayonet from Mr Gore, which hung in a sheath by his side. This was represented to the chief, who pretended to send some persons in search of it. But, in all probability, he countenanced the theft ; for, soon after, Omai had a dagger stolen from his side in the same manner, though he did not miss it immediately.

‘ Whether they observed any signs of uneasiness in us, or that they voluntarily repeated their emblems of friendship when we expressed a desire to go, I cannot tell ; but, at this time, they brought some green boughs, and, sticking their ends in the ground, desired we would hold them as we sat. Upon my urging our business again, they gave us to understand that we must stay and eat with them ; and a pig that we saw soon after lying near the oven, which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai’s apprehensions of being put into it himself, and made us think it might be intended for our repast. The chief also promised to send some people to procure food for the cattle ; but it was not till late in the afternoon that we saw them return with

a few plantain-trees, which they carried to our boats.

In the mean time, Mr Burney and I attempted again to go to the beach; but when we arrived, found ourselves watched by people who seemed to have been planted there for that purpose: for, when I tried to wade in upon the reef, one of them took hold of my clothes, and dragged me back. I picked up some small pieces of coral, which they required me to throw down again; and, on my refusal, they made no scruple to take them forcibly from me. I had gathered some small plants; but these also I could not be permitted to retain; and they took a fan from Mr Burney, which he had received as a present on coming ashore. Omai said, we had done wrong in taking up any thing; for it was not the custom here to permit freedoms of that kind to strangers, till they had, in some measure, naturalized them to the country, by entertaining them with festivity two or three days.

Finding that the only method of procuring better treatment was to yield implicit obedience to their will, we went up again to the place we had left; and they now promised that we should have a canoe to carry us off to our boats, after we had eaten of a repast which had been prepared for us.

Accordingly, the second chief before mentioned, having seated himself upon a low broad stool of blackish hard wood, tolerably polished, and, directing the multitude to make a pretty large ring, made us sit down by him. A considerable number of cocea-nuts were now brought, and, shortly after, a long green basket, with a sufficient quantity of baked plantains to have served a dozen persons. A

piece of the young hog that had been dressed was then set before each of us, of which we were desired to eat. Our appetites, however, had failed from the fatigue of the day; and though we did eat a little to please them, it was without satisfaction to ourselves.

It being now near sun-set, we told them it was time to go on board. This they allowed; and sent down to the beach the remainder of the victuals that had been dressed, to be carried with us to the ship. We found a canoe ready to put us off to our boats, which the natives did with the same caution as when we landed. They put us on board the boats, with the cocoa-nuts, plantains, and other provisions, which they had brought; and we rowed to the ships, very well pleased that we at last had got out of the hands of our troublesome masters.

The restrained situation of these gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of observing the country; for they were seldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and consequently were confined to the surrounding objects. The first thing that attracted their notice was the number of people, which must have been at least two thousand. Except a few, those who had come on board the ships were all of an inferior class; for a great number of those that our gentlemen met with on shore, had a superior dignity of demeanor, and their complexion was much whiter. In general, they had their hair, which was long and black, tied on the crown of the head. Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, and of a delicate complexion. The old men were, many of them, corpulent; and they,

as well as  
of skin.  
of cloth  
pieces of  
and white  
sleeves;  
the core  
their ear  
the mem  
some oc  
persons  
mon bas  
their nec  
consider  
none but  
danced,  
puncture  
the wom  
that nam  
their hair  
cut all o  
lines.  
laid in a  
ed to he  
after the  
chief in  
beautiful  
were ob  
duals wh  
the face  
Many  
clubs, th  
feet long  
ed. Th



as well as the young, had a remarkable smoothness of skin. Their general dress consisted of a piece of cloth wrapped about the waist, but some had pieces of mats, most curiously variegated with black and white, formed into a kind of jacket without sleeves; while others wore conical caps made of the core of a cocoa-nut, interwoven with beads. In their ears, which were pierced, they hung pieces of the membranous part of some plant, or stuck there some odoriferous flower. The chiefs and other persons of rank had two little balls, with a common base, made of bone, which they hung round their necks with small cord. Red feathers are here considered as a particular mark of distinction; for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced, assumed them. Some of the men were punctured all over the sides and back, and some of the women had the same ornament (if it deserves that name) on their legs. The elderly women had their hair cropped short, and many of them were cut all over the fore part of the body in oblique lines. The wife of a chief appeared with her child laid in a piece of red cloth which had been presented to her husband; she suckled the infant much after the same manner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young, beautiful, and modest. No personal deformities were observed in either sex, except a few individuals who had scars of broad ulcers remaining on the face and other parts.

Many of the natives were armed with spears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about six feet long, made of a hard black wood, neatly polished. The spears were formed of the same wood,

simply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long ; but some were so short as to seem intended for darts.

They preserved their canoes from the sun under the shade of various trees. Our gentlemen saw eight or ten of them, all double ones ; that is, two single ones fastened together by rafters lashed across. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the sides were rounded with a plank raised upon them. Two of these canoes were curiously stained all over with black, in innumerable small figures, as triangles, squares, &c. and were far superior to any thing of the kind Mr Anderson had ever seen at any other island in the South Sea. The paddles were almost elliptical, and about four feet long.

Most of the trees observed by Mr Anderson were cocoa palms, some species of *bihiscus*, a sort of *euphorbia*, and many of the same kind he had seen at Mangeea. The latter are tall and slender, resembling a cypress, and are called by the natives *etoo*. He also saw a species of *convulvulus*, and some treacle mustard : besides which, there are doubtless other plants and fruit-trees which he had not an opportunity of seeing. The soil, towards the sea, is nothing more than a bank of coral, generally steep and rugged, which though it has probably been for many centuries exposed to the weather has suffered no further change than becoming black on its surface. The reef, or rock, with which the shore is lined, runs to different breadths into the sea, where it resembles a high steep wall. It is of a brownish colour, and nearly even with the surface of the water ; and though its texture is ra-

ther poro  
ing of the

Thoug  
means of  
the prece  
view was  
any thing

It was  
expedition  
terpreter,  
this day.

many que  
our count  
according  
his answe

Our coun  
their islan  
war (desc  
several pe  
of them  
one shot.

were on l  
though t  
those he l  
they coul  
tance the  
island, a  
quired b  
Omai exp  
pened luc  
ket. Th  
powder t  
mitted to  
his descri

ther porous, it is capable of withstanding the washing of the surf, which constantly breaks upon it.

Though the landing of our gentlemen was the means of enriching the narrative of the voyage with the preceding particulars, the principal object in view was partly unattained; for we scarce procured any thing worth mentioning from the island.

It was mentioned that Omai was sent upon this expedition, and, perhaps, his being Mr Gore's interpreter, was not the only service he performed this day. He was asked by the natives a great many questions concerning our people, our ships, our country, and the sort of arms we used; and, according to the account he gave to Captain Cook, his answers were not a little upon the marvellous. Our country, he told them, had ships as large as their island; on board which were instruments of war (describing our guns) of such dimensions, that several people might sit within them; and that one of them was sufficient to crush the whole island at one shot. This led them to ask what sort of guns were on board Captain Cook's ships. He said that though they were but small in comparison with those he had described, yet, with such as they were, they could, with the greatest ease, and at the distance the ships were from the shore, destroy the island, and kill every soul in it. They then inquired by what means this could be done, and Omai explained it as well as he could. He happened luckily to have a few cartridges in his pocket. These he produced; the balls, and the gunpowder that was to set them in motion, were submitted to inspection; and, to supply the defects of his description, an appeal was made to the senses

of the spectators. The multitude had been formed, as before mentioned, into a circle. This furnished Omai with a convenient stage for his exhibition. In the centre of this, the small quantity of gunpowder collected from his cartridges was properly disposed upon the ground, and set on fire by a piece of burning wood from the oven. The sudden blast, and loud report, the mingled flame and smoke that instantly succeeded, filled the whole assembly with astonishment. They no longer doubted the tremendous power of our weapons, and gave full credit to all that Omai had said.

If it had not been for the terrible idea they conceived of the ship's guns, from the specimen of their mode of operation, it was thought they would have detained the gentlemen all night. For Omai assured them, that if he and his companions did not return on board the same day, they might expect that the Captain would fire upon the island. And as the ships stood in nearer the land in the evening than they had done any time before, of which they were observed to take great notice, they probably thought that this formidable attack was meditating; and, therefore, they suffered their guests to depart: in the expectation, however, of seeing them again on shore next morning. But captain Cook was too sensible of the risk they had already run, to think of repeating the experiment.

This island, though never before visited by Europeans, had actually other strangers residing in it. Omai, when he landed with Mr Gore, found amongst the crowd, three of his own countrymen, natives of the Society islands. At the distance of about 200 leagues from those islands, an immense

unknown  
sor-boat  
use of,  
land is  
a place,  
people,  
unexpect  
feigned  
and whi  
life, dese  
It ma  
tisfaction  
conversa  
ty person  
a canoe  
bouring  
arising,  
get back  
being a  
was scan  
they suff  
not whi  
many da  
out by fa  
diminish  
canoe o  
seemed  
by its si  
vidence  
island,  
brought  
was sine  
this acc  
tion, spe  
VOL. I



unknown ocean intervening, with such wretched  
sco-boats as their inhabitants are known to make  
use of, and fit only for a passage where sight of  
land is scarcely ever lost, such a meeting, at such  
a place, so accidentally visited by Captain Cook's  
people, may well be looked upon as one of those  
unexpected situations with which the writers of  
feigned adventures love to surprise their readers,  
and which, when they really happen in common  
life, deserve to be recorded for their singularity.

It may be imagined, with what surprise and sa-  
tisfaction Omai and his countrymen engaged in  
conversation. Their story is very affecting. Twen-  
ty persons, of both sexes, had embarked on board  
a canoe at Otabeite, to cross over to the neigh-  
bouring island Ulietea. A violent contrary wind  
arising, they could neither reach the latter, nor  
get back to the former. Their intended passage  
being a very short one, their stock of provisions  
was scanty, and soon exhausted. The hardships  
they suffered, while driven by the storm they knew  
not whither, are not to be conceived. They passed  
many days without any thing to eat or drink. Worn  
out by famine and fatigue, their numbers gradually  
diminished. Four men only survived, when the  
canoe overset; and then the perdition of these  
seemed inevitable. However, they kept hanging  
by its side, during some of the last days, till Pro-  
vidence brought them in sight of the people of this  
island, who immediately sent out canoes, and  
brought them ashore. Of the four thus saved one  
was since dead. The other three, who lived to give  
this account of their almost miraculous transplanta-  
tion, spoke highly of the kind treatment they here

met with; and they were so well satisfied with their present situation, that they refused the offer made to them, at Omai's request, of giving them a passage to their native islands. The similarity of manners and language had more than naturalized them to this spot; and the fresh connexions they had here formed, and which it would have been painful to have broken off after such a length of time, sufficiently account for this refusal. They had arrived upon this island at least twelve years ago.

'The landing,' says Captain Cook, 'of our gentlemen on this island, cannot but be considered as a very fortunate circumstance. It has proved the means of thus bringing to our knowledge a fact, not only very curious, but very instructive. The application of the above narrative is obvious. It will serve to explain, better than a thousand conjectures of speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the earth, and, in particular, how the islands of the South Sea, may have been first peopled; especially those that lie remote from any inhabited continent, or from each other.'

According to Omai's account of what he learned in conversation with his three countrymen, the manners of those islanders, their method of treating strangers, and their general habits of life, are much like those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring isles. Their religious ceremonies and opinions are also nearly the same. From every circumstance, indeed, it is indubitable, that the natives of Wateoo sprang originally from the same stock which has spread itself so wonderfully all over the immense extent of the South Sea. One

would su  
claim to  
said, tha  
pellation  
gods; est  
possessed  
thusiastic  
observing  
tertained  
prevalent  
naburgh  
landers pe  
was prett  
Any pecu  
the mem  
had put d  
natives.

Having  
sequence  
carried th  
on the ni  
ing Capta  
had disco

About  
it, and M  
two boats  
provende  
ed the la  
surf brok  
reached t  
tured in,  
safe on sh  
far succe  
assistance

would suppose, however, that they put in their claim to a more illustrious extraction; for Omai said, that they dignified their island with the appellation of *Wenooa no te Eatooa*, that is, a land of gods; esteeming themselves a sort of divinities, and possessed with the spirit of Eatooa. This wild enthusiastic notion Omai seemed much to approve of; observing, that there were instances of its being entertained at Otaheite, but that it was universally prevalent among the inhabitants of Mataia, or Os-naburgh island. Omai, and our two New Zealanders perfectly understood their language, which was pretty much the same as at the other islands. Any peculiarities in it cannot be pointed out, as the memorandum book, in which Mr Anderson had put down a specimen of it, was stolen by the natives.

Having failed in procuring any supplies of consequence in Wateoo, and the easterly swell having carried the ships to some distance from the island on the night of the 3d of April, early next morning Captain Cook steered for the island which he had discovered three days before.

About ten o'clock next morning they got up to it, and Mr Gore was immediately dispatched with two boats to look out a landing-place, and procure provender for the cattle. Though a reef surrounded the land here, as at *Wateoo*, and a considerable surf broke against the rocks, our boats no sooner reached the west side of the island, but they ventured in, and Mr Gore and his attendants arrived safe on shore. Captain Cook seeing they had so far succeeded, sent a small boat to know if further assistance was required. She waited to take in a

lading of the produce of the island, and did not return till three o'clock in the afternoon. Being cleared, she was sent again for another cargo; the jolly-boat was also dispatched upon the same business, with orders for Mr Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually observed.

The supply obtained here was about two hundred cocoa-nuts for ourselves, and for our cattle some grass, and a quantity of the leaves and branches of young cocoa-trees, and the pandanus.

This island lies about three or four leagues from *Wateoo*, the inhabitants of which call it *Otakootia*. It is in the latitude of  $19^{\circ} 15'$  south, and the longitude of  $201^{\circ} 37'$  east, and is supposed not to exceed three miles in circuit.

This island is entirely destitute of water. Cocoa-palms were the only common trees found there, of which there were several clusters, and great quantities of the *wharra*, or *pandanus*. There were also the *callophyllum*, *suriana*, with a few other shrubs; also a sort of *bind-weed*, *treacle-mustard*, a species of *spurge*, and the *morinda citrifolia*; the fruit of which is sometimes eaten by the natives of Otaheite. Omai, who landed with the party, dressed some of it for their dinner, but they thought it very indifferent.

A beautiful cuckoo, of a chesnut brown, variegated with black, was the only bird seen amongst the trees; but, upon the shore, were a small sort of curlew, blue and white herons, some egg-birds, and great numbers of noddies.

One of the company caught a lizard running up a tree; though small, it had a most forbidding as-

pect.  
finite  
ed wi  
es tow  
pretty

At  
on the  
which  
ally v  
stones  
trees  
which  
posed  
one p  
lar so  
from  
been v  
fish:

one o  
sit the

Th  
to the  
Herve  
Cook  
sight  
6th,  
appro  
severa  
ships.  
stanced  
seen  
deed,  
blew,  
Ad



pect. Many of another sort were also seen. Infinite numbers of a kind of moth, elegantly specked with black, white and red, frequented the bushes towards the sea. Some other sorts of moths and pretty butterflies were seen.

At this time there were no fixed inhabitants upon the island; but we discovered a few empty huts, which convinced us of its being, at least, occasionally visited. Monuments, consisting of several large stones, were also erected under the shade of some trees: there were also some smaller ones, with which several places were inclosed, where we supposed their dead had been buried. We found in one place a great many cockle-shells, of a particular sort, finely grooved, and larger than the first; from which it was conjectured, that the island had been visited by persons who sometimes feed on shell-fish. Mr Gore left some nails and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the use of those who might visit the island in future.

The boats being hoisted in, we made sail again to the northward, resolving to try our fortune at Hervey's Island, which was discovered by captain Cook in 1773, during his last voyage. We got sight of it about day-break in the morning of the 6th, at the distance of about three leagues. We approached it about eight o'clock, and observed several canoes coming from the shore towards the ships. We were rather surprised at this circumstance, as no traces or signs of inhabitants were seen when the island was first discovered: this, indeed, might be owing to a brisk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes venturing out.

Advancing still towards the island, six or seven

double canoes immediately came near us, with from three to six men in each of them. At the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship they stopped, and it was with difficulty that Omai prevailed on them to come along-side; but they could not be induced to trust themselves on board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour did not indicate a disposition to trust us, or to treat us well. They attempted to steal some oars out of the Discovery's boat, and struck a man for endeavouring to prevent them. They also cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the stern of that ship, and at first would not restore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchase it from them. Those who were about the Resolution behaved equally disorderly and daring; for, with a sort of hooks made of a long stick, they openly endeavoured to rob us of several things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of our people. It appeared that they had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged some fish for some of our small nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and called them *goore*. Pieces of paper, or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greatest avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they immediately plunged in to swim after it.

Though the distance between Hervey's Island and Watecoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ greatly from each other, both in person and disposition. The colour of the natives of Hervey's Island is of a deeper cast, and several of them had a fierce savage aspect, like the natives of New Zealand, though some were fairer. Their hair was long and black, either hanging loose about their

shoulder  
head.  
and, in  
brownis  
piece of  
part of  
We sav  
of the c  
mented  
and hun

The  
natives  
their bo  
though  
ing of t  
Their l  
heite, t  
the nat  
whence  
the nam  
board.  
they ve  
among  
large sh  
as they  
lution a  
name o  
likewis  
king o  
The  
fish, an  
and the  
tains.  
ed one

shoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Some few, indeed, had it cropped short, and, in two or three of them, it was of a red or brownish colour. Their cloathing was a narrow piece of mat, bound several times round the lower part of the body, and passing between the thighs. We saw a fine cap of red feathers lying in one of the canoes, and some amongst them were ornamented with the shell of a pearl-oyster, polished, and hung about the neck.

The mode of ornament, so prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing or tatooing their bodies, not one of them had adopted; but though they were singular in this respect, their being of the same common race is not to be doubted. Their language more resembled the dialect of Otaheite, than that of Mangeea or Watecoo. Like the natives of those islands, they inquired from whence we came, whither bound, the ship's name, the name of our chief, and the number of men on board. Such questions as we proposed to them, they very readily answered. They informed us, among other things, that they had before seen two large ships, like ours, but had not spoken to them as they passed. These were, doubtless, the Resolution and Adventure. They acquainted us that the name of their island was Terouggemou Atooa; and likewise, that they were subject to Teerevatooeah, king of Watecoo.

Their food, they said, consisted of cocoa-nuts, fish, and turtle; being destitute of dogs and hogs, and the island not producing bread-fruit or plantains. Their canoes (near thirty of which appeared one time in sight) are tolerably large, and well

built, and bear some resemblance to those of Wa-tecoo.

We drew near to the northwest part of the island about one o'clock. This seemed to be the only part where we could expect to find anchorage or a landing-place for our boats. Captain Cook immediately dispatched lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound and reconnoitre the coast. The boats were no sooner hoisted out, than our new visitors suspended their traffic with us, pushing for shore as fast as possible, and came no more near us.

The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr King informed Captain Cook, that he could find no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almost a quarter of a mile from the dry land. That a number of the natives came upon the reef, armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning, as he supposed, to oppose his landing; though, at the same time, they threw cocoa-nuts to our people, and requested them to come on shore; and, notwithstanding this seeming friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a fresh supply of darts and spears.

Captain Cook considered, that as we could not bring the ships to an anchor, the attempt to procure grass here, would be attended with delay and danger. Being thus disappointed in all the islands after our leaving New-Zealand, and having, from variety of circumstances, been unavoidably retarded in our progress, it was in vain to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere, from which we were then so

far distant  
operation  
to pursue  
to preserve  
visions of  
execute  
now com  
ed.

If we  
of water  
lately vi  
back to  
But, wi  
of doing  
tle befo  
without  
ing the

The  
for the  
be well  
it being  
ed Cap  
Resolu  
the lan  
our pas

We  
Captai  
burgh  
provisi  
arrive  
those f  
again  
into th



far distant, though it was then the season for our operations there. Thus situated, it was necessary to pursue such measures as appeared best calculated to preserve our cattle, and save the stores and provisions of the ships; the better to enable us to prosecute our northern discoveries, which could not now commence till a year later than was intended.

If we could fortunately have procured a supply of water and grass, at any of the islands we had lately visited, Captain Cook intended to have stood back to the south, till he had got a westerly wind. But, without such a supply, the certain consequence of doing this would have been the loss of the cattle before it was possible for us to reach Otaheite, without gaining a single point of advantage respecting the grand object of our voyage.

The captain, therefore, determined to bear away for the Friendly Islands, where he knew he could be well supplied with every thing he wanted; and, it being necessary to run night and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep a league a-head of the Resolution; because his ship could best claw of the land, which we might possibly fall in with in our passage.

We steered west by south, with a fine breeze. Captain Cook proposed to proceed first to Middleburgh, or Eooa, thinking we might, perhaps, have provision enough for the cattle, to last till we should arrive at that island. But the next day about noon those faint breezes, that had so long retarded us, again returned; and we found it necessary to get into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage islands,

which Captain Cook discovered in 1774; that, in case of necessity, recourse might be had to them.

In order to save our water, Captain Cook ordered the still to be kept at work a whole day; during which time we procured about fifteen gallons of fresh water.

These light breezes continued till Thursday the 10th, when the wind blew some hours fresh from the north, and north-north west. In the afternoon we had some very heavy rain, attended with thunder squalls. We collected as much rain-water as filled five of our puncheons. When these squalls had blown over, the wind was very unsettled both in strength and in position, till the next day at noon, when it fixed at northwest, and north-north-west, and blew a fresh breeze.

We were thus persecuted with a wind in our teeth, and had the additional mortification to find those very winds here which we had reason to expect farther south. At day-break, however, on the 13th, we perceived Palmerston's Island, bearing west by south, at the distance of about five leagues; but did not get up with it till the next morning at eight. Captain Cook then dispatched three boats from the Resolution, and one from the Discovery, with a proper officer in each, to search for a convenient landing-place; we being now under an absolute necessity of procuring here some provender for our cattle, or we must certainly have lost them.

What is called Palmerston's Island consists of a group of small islets, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in a circular direction. The boats first exa-

mined  
ceeding  
immed  
down  
place,  
being  
howev  
were n  
party v

At  
with s  
was, a  
animal  
from l  
this e  
abound  
wharra  
this in  
sufficie  
this st  
small  
covery  
cumfe  
beyon  
entirel  
blacki  
from r

Th  
kinds  
kootai  
variety  
war b  
which  
ingly

mined the most south-easterly islet ; and, not succeeding there, ran down to the second, where they immediately landed. Captain Cook then bore down with the ships, till we were abreast of the place, where we kept standing off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon. This, however, was of no material consequence, as there were no human beings upon the islands except the party who had landed from our boats.

At one o'clock one of the boats returned laden with scurvy-grass and young cocoa trees, which was, at this time, a most excellent repast for our animals on board. A message was also brought from Mr Gore, who commanded the party upon this expedition, acquainting us that the island abounded with such produce, and also with the wharra-tree and cocoa-nuts. In consequence of this information, Captain Cook resolved to get a sufficient supply of these articles before he quitted this station, and accordingly went on shore in a small boat, accompanied by the captain of the Discovery. The island does not exceed a mile in circumference, and is not elevated above three feet beyond the level of the sea. It consisted almost entirely of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould which appeared to be produced from rotten vegetables.

This poor soil is however covered with the same kinds of shrubs and bushes as we had seen at Otakootaia or Wenooa-ette, though not in so great variety. We perceived a great number of man of war birds, tropic birds, and two sorts of boobies, which were then laying their eggs, and so exceedingly tame as to permit us to take them off their

nests, which consist only of a few sticks loosely put together. These tropic birds differ essentially from the common sort, being of a beautiful white, slightly tinged with red, and having two long tail feathers of a deepish crimson. Our people killed a considerable number of each sort; which, though not the most delicate kind of food, were highly acceptable to us, who had been a long time confined to a salt diet. We saw plenty of red crabs creeping about among the trees, and caught several fish, which, when the sea retreated, had been left in holes upon the reef.

At one part of the reef, which bounds the lake within, almost even with the surface, there was a large bed of coral, which afforded a most enchanting prospect. Its base, which was fixed to the shore, extended so far that it could not be seen, so that it appeared to be suspended in the water. The sea was then unruffled, and the refulgence of the sun exposed the various sorts of coral in the most beautiful order; some parts luxuriantly branching in the water, others appearing in vast variety of figures, and the whole greatly heightened by spangles of the richest colours, glowing from a number of large clams interspersed in every part. Even this delightful scene was greatly improved by the multitude of fishes that gently glided along seemingly with the most perfect security. Their colours were the most beautiful that can be imagined; blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far excelling any thing that can be produced by art. The richness of this sub-marine grotto was greatly increased by their various forms; and the whole could not possibly be surveyed without a pleasing transport, ac-

compa  
work

in a pi  
Ex  
the be  
tants h  
may ha  
were s  
brown  
perhap  
the po  
noe of

The  
on bo  
the nig  
the ne

The  
collect  
princip  
palm-c  
ficient  
sun-set  
board  
to emp  
next is  
for our  
off and  
the mo  
and la  
The p  
gather  
est ple  
vey the  
half a



accompanied at the same time with regret, that a work so astonishingly elegant should be concealed in a place so seldom explored by the human eye.

Except a piece of a canoe that was found upon the beach, no traces were discoverable of inhabitants having ever been here; and, probably, that may have been drifted from some other island. We were surprised, however, at perceiving some small brown rats on this little island; a circumstance, perhaps, not easily accounted for, unless we admit the possibility of their being imported in the canoe of which we saw the remains.

The boats being laden, Captain Cook returned on board, leaving Mr Gore and his party to pass the night on shore, to be ready for business early the next morning.

The 15th, like the preceding day, was spent in collecting subsistence for the cattle; consisting principally of tender branches of the wharra-tree, palm-cabbage, and young cocoa-nut trees. A sufficient supply of these having been procured by sun-set, Captain Cook ordered all the people on board; but, having very little wind, he determined to employ the next day, by endeavouring, from the next island to the leeward, to get some cocoa-nuts for our people: for this purpose, we kept standing off and on all night; and about nine o'clock in the morning, we went to the west side of the islands, and landed from our boats with little difficulty. The people immediately employed themselves in gathering cocoa-nuts, which we found in the greatest plenty; but it was a tedious operation to convey them to our boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef up to the middle in water.

o

Omai, who accompanied us, presently caught, with a scoop-net, as many fish as supplied the party on shore for dinner, besides sending a quantity to each ship. Men of war, and tropic birds, were found here in abundance, so that we fared most sumptuously. In these excursions to the uninhabited islands Omai was of the greatest service to us; he caught the fish, and dressed them, as well as the birds we killed, after the fashion of his country, with a dexterity and chearfulness that did him honour. Before night the boats made two trips, and were each time heavy laden; with the last Captain Cook returned on board, leaving his third lieutenant Mr Williamson, with a party, to prepare another lading for the boats against the next morning.

Accordingly, Captain Cook dispatched them about seven o'clock, and by noon they returned laden. No delay was made in sending them back for another cargo, with orders for all to be on board by sun-set. These orders being punctually obeyed, we hoisted in the boats, and sailed to the westward with a light air from the north.

The islet we last came from is somewhat larger than the other, and almost covered with cocoa-palms. The other productions were the same as at the first islet. On the beach were found two pieces of board, one of which was rudely carved, and an elliptical paddle. These were, perhaps, a part of the same canoe, the remains of which we had seen on the other beach, the two islets being within half a mile of each other. There were not so many crabs here as at the last place, but we found some scorpions and other insects, and a much great-

er nu  
were  
raise  
to bit  
parro  
large  
main  
in wa  
had,  
reef,  
Ther  
when  
some  
their  
walk

Mr  
shore,  
quito  
some  
like t

Th  
merst  
a reef  
of s  
the lo

Ha  
in or  
varia  
much  
saved  
could  
rain  
still a  
advan

er number of fish upon the reefs. Among the rest were some beautiful large spotted eels, which would raise themselves out of the water, and endeavour to bite their pursuers. There were also snappers, parrot-fish, and a brown spotted rock-fish, not larger than a haddock, so tame that it would remain fixed and gaze at us. If we had been really in want, a sufficient supply might easily have been had, for thousands of the clams stuck upon the reef, many of which weighed two or three pounds. There were also some other sorts of shell-fish; and when the tide flowed, several sharks came with it, some of which were killed by our people; but their presence rendered it, at that time, unsafe to walk in the water.

Mr Williamson and his party, who were left on shore, were much pestered in the night with musquitoes. Some of them shot two curlews, and saw some plovers upon the shore; one or two cuckoos, like those at Wenooa-ette, were also seen.

The islets comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be said to be the summits of a reef of coral rock, covered only with a thin coat of sand; though clothed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of the high islands of this ocean.

Having left Palmerston's Island, we steered west in order to proceed to Annamooka. We had variable winds, with squalls, some thunder, and much rain. The showers being very copious we saved a considerable quantity of water; and as we could procure a greater supply in one hour by the rain than by distillation in a month, we laid the still aside, as being attended with more trouble than advantage.

The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more disagreeable in this close rainy weather, and we apprehended it would soon be noxious. It is however remarkable, that there was not then a single person sick on board either of the ships.

We passed Savage Island, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774, in the night between the 24th and 25th; and on the 28th, about ten o'clock in the morning, we saw the islands to the eastward of Annamooka, bearing north by west about five leagues distant. We steered to the south, and then hauled up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being squally, with rain, we anchored in fifteen fathoms water.

We had scarcely anchored, when two canoes paddled towards us, and without hesitation came along-side. They bartered with us for nails some cocoa-nuts, sugar-cane, bread-fruit, and plantains, which they had brought along with them. Towards evening we had a short visit from another canoe; so eager were they to get possession of a few of our most trifling articles, that they considered the trouble and danger of paddling from Komango, at that time five miles distant, as a matter of no moment.

Next morning, at four o'clock, Lieutenant King was dispatched by Captain Cook with two boats in order to procure refreshments, and made the signal to weigh at five to proceed to Annamooka.

At day-break we had a visit from six or seven canoes, which brought with them some fowls, two pigs, several large wood-pigeons, small rails, some violet-coloured coots, besides fruits and roots of

various  
beads  
articles  
parties  
cities  
cept

M  
been  
chief  
name  
present  
more  
some  
some  
from  
bitar  
indif

T  
mool  
go b  
at th  
with  
relin  
This  
sary  
and  
tion.  
farth  
and

W  
who  
nine



various kinds, for which we gave them in exchange beads, hatchets, nails, &c. They had various other articles of commerce, but Captain Cook had given particular orders, that we should purchase no curiosities till the ships were supplied with provisions except by his permission.

Mr King's party returned about noon, having been treated with great civility at Komango. The chief of the island Tooboulangee, and another named Taipa, came on board with Mr King. They presented a hog to the captain, and promised him more next day. Mr King procured seven hogs, some fowls, and a quantity of fruits and roots, with some grass for our animals. They reported, that, from any observations they could make, the inhabitants were not numerous; their huts were very indifferent, and almost joined to one another.

The boats being aboard, we stood for Annamooka; and, having little wind, we intended to go between Annamooka-ette\*, and the breakers at the south east; but on drawing near we met with very irregular soundings, which obliged us to relinquish the design, and go to the southward. This carried us to leeward, and we found it necessary to spend the night under sail. It was dark and rainy, and we had the wind from every direction. The next morning at day-light we were farther off than we had been the preceding evening, and the wind was now right in our teeth.

We continued to ply to very little purpose the whole day, and in the evening anchored in thirty-nine fathoms water; the west point of Annamooka

bearing east-north east, four miles distant. Too-boulangee and Taipa, agreeable to their promise, brought off some hogs for Captain Cook ; we obtained others by bartering from the different canoes that followed us, and a large quantity of fruit. It is remarkable, that those who visited us from the islands on that day would hardly part with any of their commodities to any one but Captain Cook.

At four the next morning, Captain Cook ordered a boat to be hoisted out, and the master to sound the west side of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported that he had sounded between Great and Little Annamooka, where he found ten and twelve fathoms depth of water ; that the place was very well sheltered from winds ; but that no fresh water was to be had but at a considerable distance inland, and that even there it was neither plentiful nor good. For this very sufficient reason, Captain Cook resolved to anchor on the north side of the island, where in his last voyage he had found a convenient place for watering and landing.

Though not above a league distant, we did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being retarded by the quantity of canoes that crowded round the ships, laden with abundant supplies of the produce of their island. Several of these canoes, which were double, had a large sail, and carried between forty and fifty men each. Several women too appeared in the canoes, incited perhaps by curiosity to visit us ; though they were as earnest in bartering as the men, and used the paddle with equal skill and dexterity. We came to an anchor in eighteen fathoms water, the island ex-

t. Too-  
promise,  
; we ob-  
nt canoes  
fruit. It  
from the  
with any  
Captain

k order-  
aster to  
n he re-  
between  
ound ten  
he place  
that no  
siderable  
neither  
reason,  
orth side  
d found

g.  
did not  
oon, be-  
crowd-  
plies of  
ese ca-  
nd car-  
Several  
perhaps  
as ear-  
paddle  
to an  
nd ex-



A VIEW AT ANAMOOKA.

tending  
ters of  
sumed  
visited  
where  
chored

The  
ing, C  
accom  
on a pl  
tives h  
showed  
dated  
purpos  
conduc  
situate  
plantat  
which  
feet be  
attenti  
fore w  
we af  
Friend  
ing-ro  
covere

Wh  
hogs  
the sh  
few of  
suppli  
In  
with a  
were  
him.



tending from east to south west, about three quarters of a mile distant. Thus Captain Cook resumed the station which he had occupied when he visited Annamooka three years before; and probably where Tasman, who first discovered this island, anchored in 1643.

The next day, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went ashore in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke, and others, to fix on a place for setting up the observatories; the natives having readily granted us permission. They showed us every mark of civility, and accommodated us with a boat-house, which answered the purpose of a tent. Toobou, the chief of the island, conducted Captain Cook and Omai to his house, situated on a pleasant spot, in the centre of his plantation. It was surrounded with a grass plot, which he said was for the purpose of cleaning their feet before they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanliness we had never observed before, wherever we had visited in this ocean, though we afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly Islands. - No carpet in an English drawing-room could be kept neater than the mats which covered the floor of Toobou's house.

While we were on shore, we bartered for some hogs and fruits; and when we arrived on board the ships were crowded with the natives. As very few of them came empty-handed, we were speedily supplied with every refreshment.

In the afternoon Captain Cook landed again with a party of marines; and such of the cattle as were in a weakly state, were sent on shore with him. Having settled every thing to his satisfac-

tion, he returned to the ship in the evening, leaving Mr King in command upon the island. Taipa was now become our trusty friend; and, in order to be near our party, had a house carried a quarter of a mile, on men's shoulders, and placed by the side of the shed which our party occupied.

Our various operations on shore began the next day. Some were busied in making hay, others in filling our water-casks, and a third party in cutting wood. On the same day Messrs King and Bailey began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to get the rate of our time-keepers. In the evening Taipa harangued the natives for some time; but we could only guess at the subject, and supposed he was instructing them how to treat us, and advising them to bring the produce of the island to market. His eloquence had the desired effect, and occasioned us to receive a plentiful supply of provisions the next day.

On the 4th of May the Discovery lost her small bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks.

On the 6th, a chief, whose name was Feenou, visited us from Tongataboo; Taipa introduced him to us as King of all the Friendly Isles. We were now informed, that a canoe had been immediately dispatched to Tongataboo with the news so soon as we arrived; and this occasioned his coming to Annamooka. The officer on shore also informed us, that all the natives were ordered out to meet him immediately upon his arrival, who saluted him by bowing their heads as low as his feet, the soles of which they touched with the palm of each hand, and afterwards with the back part. He had also

seven  
which  
not su  
monag  
respec  
him o  
his att  
went  
he lan  
to be  
ably t  
Europ  
ly Isl  
the m  
the fo  
after  
point  
that b  
dred  
grand  
by fiv  
a few  
such  
able.  
his o  
dered  
a retr  
time  
to co  
whic  
peop  
tion,  
chief  
of t

seven or eight fine handsome women with him, which, we were told, were his wives. We could not suppose to be any thing less than a king a personage received with such extraordinary marks of respect. Captain Cook received a present from him of two fish, which he sent on board by one of his attendants; and, in the afternoon, the Captain went to pay a visit to this great man. So soon as he landed Feenou came up to him. He appeared to be about thirty years of age, and was remarkably tall and thin; his features were more of the European cast than any we had seen in the Friendly Isles. As Captain Cook perceived he was not the man whom he remembered to have seen during the former voyage in the character of the King, after the first salutation he questioned him on that point; when Taipa, with great eagerness replied, that he was the sovereign of no less than *one hundred and fifty-three islands*. In a short time our grand visitor accompanied us on board, attended by five or six servants. Captain Cook made them a few acceptable presents, and entertained them in such a manner as he thought would be most agreeable. The Captain accompanied them ashore in his own boat towards evening, when Feenou ordered three hogs to be conveyed into the boat, as a return for the presents he had received. At this time we were told of an accident, which may tend to convey some idea of the unbounded authority which the chiefs exercise over the inferior rank of people. While Feenou was on board the Resolution, all the natives were ordered, by an inferior chief, to retire from the post we occupied. Some of them however, having ventured to return, he

beat them most unmercifully with a large stick. One of them, in particular, received so violent a blow on the side of the face, that the blood gushed from his mouth and nostrils, and, after lying motionless for some time, he was removed from the place in convulsions. The person who gave the blow, on being told that he certainly had killed the man, only laughed at the circumstance; and indeed it was very evident that he did not grieve for what had happened. We had afterwards the satisfaction of hearing, that the poor sufferer was out of danger.

The bottom where the Discovery lay being very rocky and uneven, Captain Clerke determined to shift her farther to the westward. The next day (May the 7th) he gave orders to weigh the stream anchor, and heave short upon the best bower; but the united force of the whole ship's company was not able to purchase it, the cable having got foul of a rock; they waited till slack water, when the ships would tend to the ebb-tide and probably clear it, but at eleven the cable parted. The recovery of this cable caused an infinite deal of trouble, as it had got into a hole between the rocks, and could only be seen when the water was perfectly smooth; but at last, after a number of unsuccessful trials, they were lucky enough to weigh it. This day and the next also, Feenou dined with Captain Cook, attended by Taipa, Toobou, and some other chiefs. None but Taipa, however, was permitted to sit at table, or even to eat in his presence. This etiquette greatly pleased Captain Cook, for before Feenou arrived he had commonly more visitors than he inclined; as his table frequently over-

flower  
of the  
with  
W  
terity  
very  
fore t  
stolen  
none  
him,  
get it  
that p  
broug  
ence  
one o  
the b  
he ha  
this o  
a doz  
hog f  
stance  
rank,  
plove  
flogg  
had b  
were  
cedin  
advise  
we w  
with  
inser  
chast  
cont  
had



flowed with people of both sexes. For the women of the Friendly Isles have the privilege of eating with the men, which is not the case at O'abeite.

We had frequent occasions to observe the dexterity which these people possess at pilfering; the very chiefs at times practised a little. Having, before the arrival of Feenou, had a large junk axe stolen out of the ship, which we could impute to none but the natives, the captain complained to him, and required he would use his authority to get it restored: he immediately gave orders for that purpose, and before dinner was finished it was brought us aboard; such was the explicit obedience paid to his commands. On the 9th of May one of them was detected carrying out of the ship the bolt belonging to the spun-yarn-winch, which he had carefully concealed under his clothes. For this offence Captain Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty. Though, after this circumstance, we were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their servants, or slaves, were constantly employed in this dirty business; and they received a flogging with as much seeming indifference as if it had been upon the main-mast. When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, instead of interceding in their behalf, their masters would often advise us to kill them. This being a punishment we were not fond of inflicting, they usually escaped without any kind of punishment; they were alike insensible of the shame and torture of corporal chastisement. At length, however, Captain Clerke contrived a mode of treatment which we supposed had some effect. Immediately upon detection he

ordered their heads to be completely shaved; and thus pointed them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen, and put our people upon their guard to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their thefts.

Feenou was so fond of our company, that he dined on board every day, though he did not always partake of our fare. On the 10th, his servants brought him a mess, which had been dressed on shore, consisting of fish, soup, and yams; coconut liquor had been used instead of water, in which the fish had been boiled or stewed, (perhaps in a wooden vessel with hot stones) and it was carried on board on a plaintain leaf. Captain Cook tasted of the mess, and was so well pleased with it that he afterwards ordered some fish to be dressed in the same way; but though his cook succeeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the dish he attempted to imitate.

Having, in a great measure, exhausted the island of almost every article of food, on Sunday the 11th of May, we removed from the shore the observatories, horses, and other things that we had landed; intending to sail as soon as the *Discovery* should have found her best bower-anchor. Feenou hearing that the captain meant to proceed to Tongataboo, earnestly entreated him to alter his plan; expressing as much aversion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wished to promote some particular interest of his own. He warmly recommended a group of islands called Hapaee, lying to the north-east; where, he assured us, we could be easily and plentifully supplied with every refreshment; and even offered to accompany us thither in person. In

conse  
of: a  
pean  
Capt  
On  
was  
the 1  
Th  
other  
than  
but o  
ships  
about  
beach  
of th  
island  
ha  
a gra  
any c  
parts  
the so  
dish  
be fo  
Th  
place  
they  
ed by  
tives  
them  
cipal  
sive,  
feet  
withi  
pal p

consequence of this advice Hapae was made choice of: and, as it had not been visited by any European ships, the surveying it became an object to Captain Cook.

On Tuesday the 13th, Captain Clerke's anchor was happily recovered; and, on the morning of the 14th, we got under sail and left Annamooka.

Though this island is somewhat higher than the other small islets that surround it, yet it is lower than Mangeea and Wateoo, and even those are but of a moderate height. The shore, where our ships lay, consists of a steep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two sandy beaches, which are defended from the sea by a reef of the same sort of rock. In the centre of the island there is a salt water lake about a mile and an half in breadth, round which the ground rises with a gradual ascent, and we could not trace its having any communication with the sea. On the rising parts of the island, and especially towards the sea, the soil is either of a blackish loose mould, or a reddish clay; but there is not a stream of fresh water to be found in any part of the island.

The land here is well cultivated except in a few places; and though some parts appear to lie waste, they are only left to recover the strength exhausted by constant culture; for we often saw the natives at work upon these spots in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extensive, and inclosed with fences of reed about six feet high. Fences of less compass were often seen within these, surrounding the houses of the principal people. The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees

are interspersed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the island, especially towards the sea, and round the lake, are covered with luxuriant trees and bushes; among which there are a great many mangroves and faitanoo-trees. All the rocks and stones about the island are of coral, except in one place, to the right of the sandy beach, where there is a rock of about twenty-five feet in height, of a calcareous stone, and of a yellowish colour; but, even here, some large pieces are to be seen of the same coral rock as that which composes the shore.

We sometimes amused ourselves in walking up the country and shooting wild ducks, resembling our widgeon, which are very numerous on the salt lake, as well as on the pool where we procured our water. We found, in these excursions, that the inhabitants frequently deserted their houses to repair to the trading-place, without entertaining the least suspicion that strangers would take away or destroy any property that belonged to them. From this circumstance it might be supposed, that most of the natives were sometimes collected on the beach, and that there would be no great difficulty in forming an accurate computation of their number; but the continual resort of visitors from other islands rendered it impossible. However, as we never saw more than a thousand persons collected at one time, it may be reasonably supposed, that there are about twice that number upon the island.

In the direct tract to Hapae, whither we were now bound, to the north and north-east of Annamooka, a great number of small isles are seen.

Amic  
we w  
for sh  
nativ  
there  
mook  
above  
and T  
heigh  
Feen  
lution  
sailing  
gatab  
of wh  
Th  
most  
of the  
only l  
shores  
and o  
their  
cloath  
palms  
garde  
now h  
and t  
tion o  
these  
land v  
now  
bush o  
In  
to the  
board



Amidst the rocks and shoals adjoining to this group, we were doubtful whether there was a free passage for ships of such magnitude as ours; though the natives sailed through the intervals in their canoes: therefore, when we weighed anchor from Annamooka, we steered to go to the westward of the above islands, and north-northwest toward Kao, and Toofooa, two islands remarkable for their great height, and the most westerly of those in sight. Feenou, with his attendants, remained in the Resolution till about noon, and then entered the large sailing canoe, which had brought him from Tongataboo, and stood in amongst the cluster of islands of which we were now abreast.

They are scattered, at unequal distances, and most of them are as high as Annamooka. Some of them are two or three miles in length, and others only half a mile. Many of them have steep rocky shores, like Annamooka; some have reddish cliffs, and others have sandy beaches, extending almost their whole length. In general, they are entirely clothed with trees, among which are many cocoa-palms, each having the appearance of a beautiful garden placed in the sea. The serene weather we now had, contributed greatly to heighten the scene; and the whole might convey an idea of the realization of some fairy land. It appears, that some of these islands have been formed as Palmerston's Island was supposed to have been; for one of them is now entirely sand, and another has but a single bush or tree upon it.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, we steered to the north, leaving Toofooa and Kao on our larboard. We intended to have anchored for the

night, but it arrived before we could find a place in less than fifty fathoms water; and we rather chose to spend the night under sail, than come in to such a depth.

In the afternoon, we had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and observed the smoke of it several times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the Friendly Islanders entertain superstitious notions, and call it *Kollofecca*, saying, it is an Otooa, or divinity. We were informed, that it sometimes throws up very large stones, and the *crater* is compared to the size of a small islet, which has not ceased smoking in the memory of the inhabitants; nor have they any tradition that it ever did. We sometimes saw the smoke from the centre of the island, even at Annamooka, the distance of at least ten leagues. We were told that Toofoa was but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it was excellent.

At day-break, on the 15th, we were not far from Kao, which is a large rock of a conic figure; we steered to the passage between Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze at southeast. About ten o'clock Feenou came on board, and continued with us all day. He brought with him a quantity of fruit and two hogs; and, in the course of the day, several canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which was very acceptable to us, as our stock began to be low. At noon, our latitude was  $19^{\circ} 49' 45''$  south, and we had made seven miles of longitude from Annamooka. After having passed Footooha, we met with a reef of rocks, and there being but little wind, it was attended with some difficulty to keep clear of them. Hav-

ing passed this reef, we hauled up for Neeneva, a small low isle in the direction of east-northeast from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again disappointed; for, notwithstanding we had land in every direction, the sea was unfathomable. We plainly saw, in the course of this night, flames issuing from the volcano upon Toofoa.

At day-break on the 16th, we steered, with a gentle breeze at southeast, for Hapae, which was now in sight; and perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock we saw it plainly forming three islands; nearly equal in size; and, soon after, a fourth appeared to the southward of these, as large as any of the others. Each of the islands appeared to be of a similiar height and appearance, and about six or seven miles in length. The most northern of them is called Haano, the next Foa, the third Lefooga, and the fourth Hoolaiva; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapae.

By sun-set we got up with the northermost of these isles, where we experienced the same distress for want of anchorage, that we did the two preceding evenings; having another night to spend under sail with land and breakers in every direction. Feenou, who had been on board all day, went forward to Hapae in the evening, and took Omai with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of our disagreeable situation, and kept up a good fire the whole night, by way of a land-mark.

At the return of day-light, on the 17th, being then close in with Foa, we perceived it was joined

to Haanno, by a reef running from one island to the other, even with the surface of the sea. Captain Cook dispatched a boat to look for anchorage; and a proper place was found, a-breast of a reef which joins Lefooga to Foa, having twenty-four fathoms depth of water. In this station, the northern point of Hapae bore north  $16^{\circ}$  east. We were not above three quarters of a mile from the shore; and, as we lay before a creek in the reef, it was convenient landing at all times.

As soon as we had anchored, we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, and our ships were presently filled with the natives. They brought with them hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for cloth, knives, beads, nails, and hatchets. Feenou and Omai having come on board, early in the morning, in order to introduce Captain Cook to the people of the island, he soon accompanied them on shore for that purpose.

The chief conducted the Captain to a hut, situate close to the sea-beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this, Feenou, Omai, and Captain Cook, were seated. The other chiefs, and the multitude, appeared fronting them on the outside; and they also seated themselves. Captain Cook being asked how long he intended to stay, answered five days. Taipa was, therefore, ordered to sit by him, and declare this to the people. He then harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as we afterwards were informed by Omai. He exhorted both old and young to look upon Captain Cook as a friend, who meant to continue with them a few days; and that, during his stay among them, they

would  
in any  
as ex  
c. to  
exchan  
ter Ta  
Feenou  
formed  
make a  
The C  
him su  
This  
chiefs  
from  
last of  
ed his  
Captain  
doubtless  
with th

Feenou  
to sit  
had do  
These  
request  
what  
water  
venient  
former  
yams,  
for his  
to par  
ship,  
table.  
them



would not steal any thing from him, or offend him in any other manner. He informed them that it was expected they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships; for which they would receive in exchange such articles as he enumerated. Soon after Taipa had delivered his address to the assembly Feenou left them; on which Captain Cook was informed by Taipa, that it was necessary he should make a present to Earoupa, the chief of the island. The Captain being not unprepared for this, gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality created similar demands from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and even from Taipa himself. Soon after he had made the last of these presents, Feenou returned, and expressed his displeasure with Taipa for suffering the Captain to be so lavish of his favours. But this was, doubtless, a finesse, as he certainly acted in concert with the others.

Feenou now resumed his seat, ordering Earoupa to sit by him, and harangue the people as Taipa had done, which he did nearly to the same purpose. These ceremonies over, the chief, at the Captain's request, conducted him to three stagnant pools of what he called fresh water; in one of which the water was indeed tolerable, and the situation convenient for filling our casks. On his return to his former station, he found a baked hog and some yams, smoking hot, ready to be conveyed on board for his dinner. He invited Feenou and his friends to partake of the repast, and they embarked for the ship, though none but himself sat down with us at table. Dinner being over, the Captain conducted them on shore; and, before he returned, received,

as a present from the chief, a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. We had a plentiful supply of provisions, for, in the course of the day, we got by bartering with the natives, about twenty small hogs, together with a large quantity of fruit and roots.

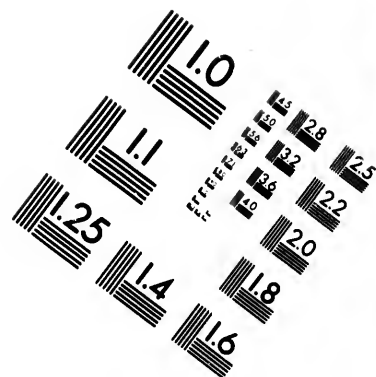
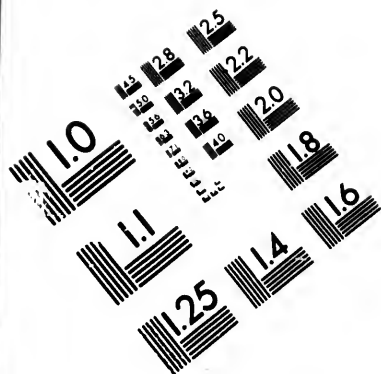
On Sunday the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omai, who now slept on shore with the chief, came on board, to request Captain Cook's presence upon the island. He accompanied them, and, upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been seated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourse of people already assembled. Though he imagined that something extraordinary was in agitation, yet he could not conjecture what, nor could Omai give him any information.

Soon after he was seated, about an hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar canes; their burdens were deposited on our left. A number of others arrived soon after, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on the right side. To these were fastened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls; and to those upon the left, six pigs and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the articles on the left side, and another chief before those on the right; they being, it was supposed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapae for the present occasion.

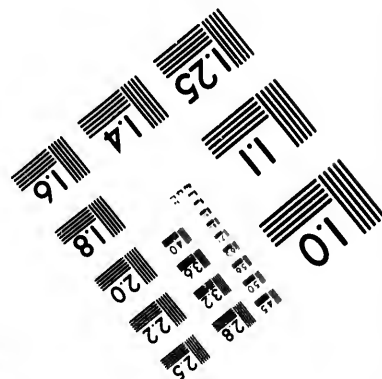
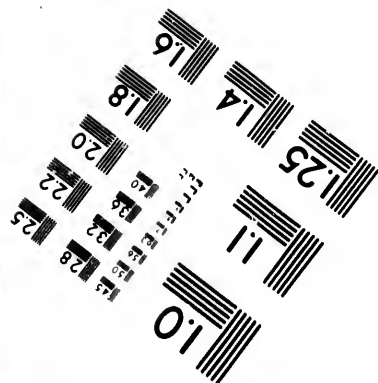
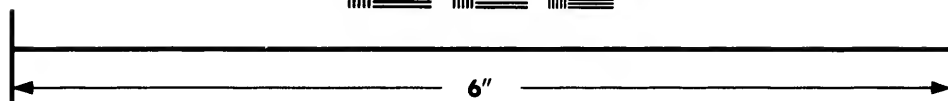
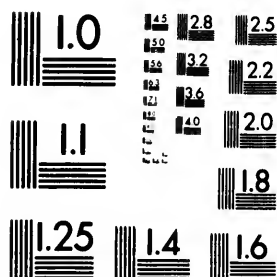
When this munificent collection of provisions

hundred of  
 men with  
 and sugar  
 your left.  
 turning the  
 into two  
 fastened  
 nose up-  
 pa seat-  
 le, and  
 being,  
 ocured  
 plicitly  
 a, and  
 chiefs of  
 divisions





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503



18 20 22 25  
28 30 32 35

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17

Vol. 1. P. 179.

Under the name



179.

THE RECEPTION OF CAPTAIN COOLIN IN NAPLES

Illustration

was pl  
the be  
circl  
mber  
e, on  
minute  
side, a  
themse  
they su  
bars; c  
of the  
pressiv  
pose h  
ed; th  
per at  
contin  
pons w  
bat, th  
chief, t  
old me  
plaudin  
cially t  
the gl  
huzzas  
This  
a shor  
up wit  
were p  
heite,  
Englis  
steppe  
ing wi  
test, h  
space

was placed in order, and advantageously disposed, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle, or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Presently after, they successively entertained us with single combats; one champion from one side challenging those of the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was, in general, accepted; the two combatants placed themselves in proper attitudes, and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the conclusion of each combat, the victor squatted himself down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men, who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudit in a very few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas.

This entertainment was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling and boxing-matches. The first were performed in the method practised at Otaheite, and the second differed very little from the English manner. A couple of stout wenches next stepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for, in the space of half a minute, one of them gave it up.

was placed in order, and advantageously disposed, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole. Immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle, or area; where they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Presently after, they successively entertained us with single combats; one champion from one side challenging those of the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was, in general, accepted; the two combatants placed themselves in proper attitudes, and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken. At the conclusion of each combat, the victor squatted himself down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men, who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudit in a very few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired in two or three loud huzzas.

This entertainment was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling and boxing-matches. The first were performed in the method practised at Otaheite, and the second differed very little from the English manner. A couple of stout wenches next stepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for, in the

The victorious heroine was applauded by the spectators, in the same manner as the successful combatants of the other sex. Though we expressed some disapprobation at this part of the entertainment, it did not hinder two other females from entering the lists; who seemed to be spirited girls, and, if two old women had not interposed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. At least three thousand spectators were present when these combats were exhibited, and every thing was conducted with the most perfect good humour on all sides; though some of the champions, of both sexes, received blows which they must have felt the effect of for some time after. The diversions being finished, the chief informed Captain Cook, that the provisions on our right hand were a present to Omai; and that those on our left (making about two-thirds of the whole quantity) were intended for him, and that he might suit his own convenience in taking them on board.

Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Feenou, whose favours far exceeded any that Captain Cook had ever received from the sovereigns of any of the islands which he had visited in the Pacific Ocean. He, therefore, embraced the first opportunity of convincing Feenou that he was not insensible of his liberality, by bestowing upon him such commodities as he supposed were most valuable in his estimation. Feenou was so highly pleased with the return that was made him, that he left the Captain still indebted to him, by sending him two large hogs, some yams, and a considerable quantity of cloth.

Feen  
marine  
dered  
Ma  
volati  
to give  
chief,  
which  
terity,  
militar  
formed  
sons w  
his har  
half lo  
With  
each o  
movem  
first, t  
and so  
that th  
front,  
tended  
formed  
to two  
one of  
dance  
tainme  
The  
produc  
wood,  
by bea  
howev  
rected  
music,



Feenou having expressed a desire to see the marines perform their exercise, Captain Cook ordered them all ashore on the morning of the 20th May. After they had gone through various evolutions, and fired several volleys, which seemed to give pleasure to our numerous spectators, the chief, in his turn, entertained us with an exhibition, which was performed with an exactness and dexterity, far surpassing what they had seen of our military manœuvres. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which one hundred and five persons were engaged; each having an instrument in his hands, resembling a paddle, two feet and an half long, with a thin blade, and a small handle. With these instruments various flourishes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement, or a different attitude of the body. At first, the dancers ranged themselves in three lines, and so changed their stations by different evolutions, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themselves in one line; afterwards they formed themselves into a semi-circle; and then into two square columns. During the last movement, one of them came forward, and performed an antic dance before Captain Cook, with which the entertainment ended.

The music that accompanied the dances was produced by two drums, or rather hollow logs of wood, from which they forced some varied notes by beating on them with two sticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much assisted or directed by these sounds; but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined. Their

song was rather melodious, and their corresponding motions were so skilfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on an European theatre. It far exceeded any attempt that we had made to entertain them; in-  
 somuch that they seemed to plume themselves on their superiority over us. They esteemed none of our musical instruments, except the drum, and even thought that inferior to their own. They held our French horns in the highest contempt, and would not pay the smallest attention to them, either here or at any other of the islands.

To give them a more favourable opinion of the amusements and superior attainments of the English, Captain Cook ordered some fire-works to be prepared; and, after it was dark, exhibited them in the presence of Feenou, and a vast multitude of people. They were highly entertained with the performance in general; but our water and sky-rockets, in particular, astonished them beyond all conception. They now admitted that the scale was turned in our favour.

This, however, served only as an additional stimulus to urge them to proceed to fresh exertions of their singular dexterity. As soon as our fire-works were ended, a succession of dances, which Feenou had prepared for our entertainment, began. A band of music, or chorus consisting of eighteen men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of a circle formed by the numerous spectators. About four or five of the performers had each pieces of large bambou, from three to six feet in length, each played on by one man, who held it almost

vertical  
 the ot  
 conste  
 with  
 notes,  
 strum  
 which  
 nimbl  
 lying  
 as the  
 of the  
 the ba  
 tempe  
 the m  
 sound  
 and p

Th  
 of an  
 of the  
 son flo  
 of the  
 of tre  
 edges  
 turnin  
 ing a  
 choru  
 altern  
 panice  
 of the  
 rection  
 forwa  
 the o  
 to the  
 slowly  
 VO

vertically ; the upper end of which was open, but the other closed by one of the joints. They kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, with the close end, and thus produced variety of notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all were of the bass or hollow kind ; which was counteracted by a person, who struck nimbly a piece of the same substance, split, and lying upon the ground ; furnishing a tone as acute as the others were grave and solemn. The whole of the band (including those who performed upon the bamboos) sung a slow soft air, which so finely tempered the harsher notes of the instruments, that the most perfect judge of the modulation of sweet sounds could not avoid confessing the vast power, and pleasing effect, of this simple harmony.

The concert having continued about a quarter of an hour, twenty women entered the circle. Most of them had upon their heads garlands of the crimson flowers of the China rose, or others ; and many of them had ornamented their persons with leaves of trees, cut with a great deal of nicety about the edges. They made a circle round the chorus, turning their faces towards it, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus in the same tone ; and these were repeated alternately. All this while, the women accompanied their song with several very graceful motions of their hands towards their faces, and in other directions at the same time, making constantly a step forward, and then back again, with one foot, while the other was fixed. They then turned their faces to the assembly, sung some time, and retreated slowly in a body, to that part of the circle which

was opposite the hut where the principal spectators sat. After this, one of them advanced from each side, meeting and passing each other in the front, and continuing their progress round, till they came to the rest. On which, two advanced from each side, two of whom also passed each other; and returned as the former; but the other two remained, and to these came one, from each side, by intervals, till the whole number had again formed a circle about the chorus.

Their manner of dancing was now changed to a quicker measure, in which they made a kind of half turn by leaping, and clapped their hands, and snapped their fingers, repeating some words in conjunction with the chorus. Toward the end, as the quickness of the music increased, their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful vigour and dexterity; and some of their motions, perhaps, would, with us, be reckoned rather indecent. Though this part of the performance, most probably, was not meant to convey any wanton ideas, but merely to display the astonishing variety of their movements.

To this grand female ballet succeeded a variety of other dances, in which the men bore a principal part. In some of these, the dancers increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, with such force, that a spectator, unaccustomed to the sight, would suppose they ran the risk of dislocating their necks. Their discipline was admirable; and, in no instance was more remarkable, than in the sudden transitions they so dexterously made, from the ruder exertions and harsh sounds, to the softest airs, and most gen-

tle m  
were  
just  
place

Th  
terval  
selves  
one si  
peated  
made  
sung  
quick

Th  
wome  
chief  
and g  
back  
second  
he can  
Upon  
among  
on the  
this d  
extrao

• T  
extract  
the ne  
Caroli  
cific O  
inhabit  
idea of  
shall h  
from t  
formity



the movements\*. The place where these dances were performed, was an open space among the trees, just by the sea, with lights, at small intervals, placed round the inside of the circle.

This dance being ended, after a considerable interval, twelve other men advanced, placing themselves in double rows, fronting each other. On one side was stationed a kind of prompter, who repeated several sentences, to which responses were made by the performers and the chorus. They sung and danced slowly; and gradually grew quicker, like those whom they had succeeded.

The next who exhibited themselves were nine women, who sat down opposite the hut where the chief had placed himself. A man immediately rose and gave the first of these women a blow on the back with both his fists joined. He treated the second and third in the same manner; but when he came to the fourth, he struck her upon the breast. Upon seeing this, a person instantly rising up from among the crowd, knocked him down with a blow on the head, and he was quietly carried away. But this did not excuse the other five women from so extraordinary a discipline; for they were treated in

\* The Editor here inserts a note, in which he gives an extract from the 'Lettres Edifiantes & Curieuses,' to show the near resemblance between the songs and dances of the Caroline Islanders, at an immense distance in the North Pacific Ocean, and those of the Friendly Islanders, and other inhabitants of the Southern Pacific; whence he deduces the idea of their being all derived from one common stock. We shall here, once for all, observe, that various other extracts from these Letters are interspersed, to show the same conformity in language, religion, manners, &c. &c.



the same manner by a person who succeeded him. When these nine women danced, their performance was twice disapproved of, and they were obliged to repeat it again. There was no great difference between this dance and that of the first women, except that these sometimes raised the body upon one leg, and then upon the other, alternately, by a sort of double motion.

Soon after, a person unexpectedly entered, making some ludicrous remarks on the fire-works that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the crowd. We had then a dance by the attendants of Feenou; they formed a double circle of twenty-four each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle soothing song, accompanied with the motions of the head and hands. They also began with slow movements, which gradually became more and more rapid, and finally closed with several very ingenious transpositions of the two circles.

The two last dances were universally approved by all the spectators. They were perfectly in time, and some of their gestures were so expressive, that it might justly be said, they spoke the language that accompanied them. Though the concourse of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that assembled in the forenoon, when the marines performed their exercise. At that time many of our gentlemen supposed there might be present five thousand persons, or upwards; but Captain Cook supposes that to be rather an exaggerated account.

The next day, which was the 21st of May, Captain Cook made an excursion into the island of Lefeoga, on foot, which he found to be, in some

respec  
being  
tensiv  
are st  
the so  
the so  
popul  
are ve  
inclos  
paralle  
Large  
trees,  
ral we  
fruit-t  
Comm  
seeds  
one pl  
the or  
before  
some p  
observ  
stood  
some  
island  
in som  
side h  
which  
contin  
which  
the na  
to the  
or a co  
Wh  
and w

ed him.  
rmance  
igned to  
nce be  
en, ex-  
pon one  
y a sort  
ed, ma-  
rks that  
f laugh-  
e by the  
le circle  
l joined  
with the  
o began  
became  
th seve-  
circles.  
pproved  
in time,  
ve, that  
language  
course of  
much in-  
when the  
at time  
night be  
ds; but  
an exag-  
of May,  
island of  
in some

respects, superior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but also more extensive. Many parts of the country near the sea, are still waste; owing perhaps to the sandiness of the soil. But, in the internal parts of the island, the soil is better; and the marks of considerable population, and of an improved state of cultivation, are very conspicuous. Many of the plantations are inclosed in such a manner, that the fences, running parallel to each other, form spacious public roads. Large spots, covered with the paper Mulberry-trees, were observed; and the plantations in general were abundantly stocked with such plants and fruit-trees as the island produces. To these the Commodore made some addition, by sowing the seeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian corn, &c. At one place was a house, about four times as large as the ordinary ones, with an extensive area of grass before it, to which the people probably resort on some public occasions. Near the landing-place we observed a mount two or three feet high, on which stood four or five little huts, wherein the bodies of some persons of distinction had been interred. The island is but seven miles in length; and its breadth, in some places, is not above three miles. The east side has a reef, projecting considerably, against which the sea breaks with great violence. It is a continuation of this reef that joins Lefooga to Foa, which is but half a mile distant; and, at low-water, the natives can walk upon this reef from one island to the other. The shore is either a sandy beach, or a coral rock.

When the Captain returned from his excursion and went on board, he found a large sailing canoe

fastened to the stern of the Resolution. In this canoe was Latooliboula, whom the Commodore had seen, during his last voyage, at Tongataboo, and who was then supposed by him to be the king of that island\*. He could not be prevailed upon to come on board, but continued sitting in his canoe with an air of uncommon gravity. The islanders called him *Arcekee*, which signifies King; a title which we had not heard any of them give to Feenou, however extensive his authority over them had appeared to be. Latooliboula remained under the stern till the evening, and then departed. Feenou was on board the Resolution at that time; but neither of these chiefs took the smallest notice of the other.

The next day, some of the natives stealing a tarpaulin and other things, Captain Cook applied to Feenou, desiring him to exert his authority, for the purpose of getting them restored; but this application was of no effect. On the 23d, as we were preparing to leave the island, Feenou and his prime minister Taipa came along-side in a canoe, and informed us that they were going to Vavaoo, an island situate, as they said, about two days sailing to the northward of Hapae. They assured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional supply of hogs, besides some red-feathered caps for Omai to carry with him to Otaheite, and desired us not to sail till their re-

\* In Captain Cook's narrative of that voyage, the name of this chief is said to be *Koba-ger-too Fallangou*, which is totally different from *Latooliboula*. This may perhaps be accounted for by supposing one to be the name of the person, and the other the description of his rank or title.

turn,  
which  
Capt  
chief,  
the 2  
by so  
ours  
and v  
ed, th  
tening  
inquir  
totall  
jectur  
could  
with  
to the

On  
house  
child,  
by th  
probe  
make  
anoth  
tooth  
ted th  
makin  
close  
Cook  
mark  
excell  
howe  
beard  
shells  
beard

turn, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany us to Tongataboo. Captain Cook consented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately set out for Vavaoo. On the 24th, a report was industriously spread about by some of the islanders, that a ship resembling ours had arrived at Annamooka since we left it, and was now at anchor there. It was also reported, that Toobou, the chief of that island, was hastening thither to receive these new visitors. After inquiry, however, it appeared, that this report was totally void of foundation. It is difficult to conjecture what purpose the invention of this tale could answer; unless we suppose it was contrived with a view of getting us removed from one island to the other.

On Sunday the 25th, Captain Cook went into a house where a woman was dressing the eyes of a child, who seemed blind. The instruments used by this female oculist were two slender wooden probes, with which she brushed the eyes so as to make them bleed. In the same house he found another woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a stick: she first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then making use of her instrument, took off the hair as close as if a razor had been employed. Captain Cook soon after tried upon himself one of these remarkable instruments, which he found to be an excellent substitute. The natives of these islands, however, have a different method of shaving their beards, which operation they perform with two shells; one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other, applied above, they



scrape off that part: in this manner they can shave very close, though the process is rather tedious. There are among them some men who seem to profess this trade, for it was as common for our sailors to go ashore to have their beards scraped off after the mode of Hapae, as it was for their chiefs to come on board to be shaved by our barbers.

Captain Cook finding little or nothing of what the island produced was now brought to the ships, determined to change his station, and to wait Feenou's return in some other anchoring-place, where we might still meet with refreshments. We accordingly, on the 26th, made sail to the southward along the reef of the island, and having passed several shoals, hauled into a bay that lies between the north end of Hoolaiwa and the south of Lefooga, and there anchored. We had no sooner cast anchor, than Mr Bligh, master of the Resolution, was sent to sound the bay where we were now stationed; and Captain Cook, accompanied by lieutenant Gore, landed on the southern part of Lefooga, to look for fresh water, and examine the country. On the west side of the island, they observed an artificial mount of considerable antiquity, about forty feet high, and measuring about fifty feet in the diameter of its summit. At the bottom of this mount was a stone fourteen feet high, two and a half thick, and four broad, hewn out of coral rock; and they were informed by the islanders, that not more than half its length was seen above ground. They called it *Tangata Areekee*\*; and said it had

\* *Tangata*, in the language of these people, is man; *Areekee*, king.



been set up, and the mount raised, in memory of one of their kings. On the approach of night, the Captain and Mr Gore returned on board, and Mr Bligh came back from sounding the bay, in which he found from fourteen to twenty fathoms water, with a bottom principally of sand.

Lefooga and Hoolaiva are separated from each other by a reef of coral rocks, dry at low water. Some of our gentlemen, who landed in the last mentioned island, found not the smallest mark of cultivation, or habitation, upon it, except a single hut, in which a man, employed to catch fish and turtle, resided. It is remarkable that it should remain in this desolate condition, since it communicates so immediately with Lefooga, which is so well cultivated. The west side of it has a bending, where there seems to be good anchorage; and the east side has a reef, as well as Lefooga. Uninhabited as Hoolaiva is, an artificial mount has been raised upon it, equal in height to some of the surrounding trees.

On Tuesday the 27th, at break of day, the Commodore made the signal to weigh; and as he intended to attempt, in his way to Tongataboo, a passage to Annamooka, by the southwest, among the intermediate isles, he sent Mr Bligh in a boat to sound before the ships. But before we got under sail, the wind became so variable and unsettled as to render it unsafe to attempt a passage with which we were so little acquainted: we therefore lay fast and made signal for the master to return.

Captain Cook had now an opportunity of discovering that Feenou was not the King of the

Friendly Islands, but only a subordinate chief\*; for that title, it appeared, belonged to Futtafaihe, or Poulaho, whose residence was at Tongataboo, and who now came under the stern of the Resolution, in a large sailing canoe, 'It being my interest,' says the Captain, 'as well as my inclination, to pay court to all the great men, without inquiring into the validity of their assumed titles, I invited Poulaho on board, as I understood he was very desirous to come. He could not be an unwelcome guest; for he brought with him as a present to me, two good fat hogs; though not so fat as himself. If weight of body could give weight in rank or power, he was certainly the most eminent man in that respect we had seen; for, though not very tall, he was very unwieldy, and almost shapeless with corpulence. He seemed to be about forty years of age, had straight hair, and his features differed a good deal from those of the bulk of the people.'

\* 'By a prudent regulation in their government,' says Captain Cook, 'the natives have an officer over the police, or something like it. This department, when we were amongst them, was administered by Feenou; whose business we were told, it was, to punish all offenders, whether against the state, or against individuals. He was also Generalissimo, and commanded the warriors, when called out upon service; but, by all accounts, this is very seldom. The King frequently took some pains to inform us of Feenou's office; and, among other things, told us, that if he himself should become a bad man, Feenou would kill him. What I understood, by this expression of being a bad man, was, that if he did not govern according to law or custom, Feenou would be ordered, by the other great men, or by the people at large to put him to death. There should seem to be no doubt, that a Sovereign, thus liable to be controuled, and

Poul  
After  
many p  
to wall  
attenda  
do so, i  
his hear  
viate th  
that no  
the dec  
would l  
but the  
ceremon  
tion.  
little,  
table, l  
ashore.  
he had  
with wh  
change  
to him  
therefor  
own bo  
made h  
in retu  
hogs to  
ried ou  
board r  
seated h  
placed  
formed  
punished  
monarch

Poulaho appeared to be a sedate sensible man. After he had seen every object on deck, and asked many pertinent questions; the Captain desired him to walk down into the cabin. To this some of his attendants objected; observing, that if he were to do so, it must happen, that people would walk over his head, which could not be permitted. To obviate this, the Captain gave them to understand, that no one should presume to walk on that part of the deck which was over the cabin. Whether this would have satisfied them was far from appearing; but the King himself, less scrupulous, waved all ceremony, and walked down without any stipulation. He sat down with them to dinner; but ate little, and drank less. When he arose from the table, he desired the Captain to accompany him ashore. Omai was asked to be of the party; but he had formed the closest connection with Feenou, with whom (as the strongest proof of it) he had exchanged names, and he was too faithfully attached to him to show any attention to his competitor; he therefore excused himself. The Captain, in his own boat, attended the King ashore; having first made him presents that surpassed his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be sent on board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own subjects, on a board resembling a hand-barrow, and immediately seated himself in a small house near the shore. He placed the Captain at his side; and his attendants formed a semi-circle before them, on the outside.

... punished for an abuse of power, cannot be called a despotic monarch.

of the house. An old woman sat close to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded by the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on board the ships being now displayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, inquired what they had given in exchange, and at length ordered every thing to be returned to the respective owners, except a glass bowl, which here served for himself. Those who brought these things to him first squatted themselves down before him, then deposited their purchases, and instantly rose and retired. They observed the same ceremony in taking them away; and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing. His attendants, just before they left him, paid him obeisance, by bowing their heads down to the sole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the decorum that was maintained on this occasion, having scarce seen the like anywhere, even among more civilized nations.

When the Captain arrived on board, he found the master returned from his expedition, who informed him, that as far as he had proceeded there was a passage for the ships, and tolerable anchorage; but that, towards the south and south east, he observed numerous shoals, breakers, and small isles. In consequence of this report, we relinquished all thoughts of a passage that way; and being resolved to return to Annamooka by the same route which we had so lately experienced to be a safe one, we should have sailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been unsettled. Pou-

laho c  
cap as  
greatl  
be hig  
broug  
fered;  
self th  
Omai.  
the tre  
the pa  
to tie  
the fo  
or twe  
be com  
Poulah  
nets.  
his bro  
some c  
On  
fine b  
westw  
one of  
on bo  
and th  
We no  
mission  
broug  
soon re  
on his  
and fr  
noured  
ejtoq,  
soon a  
he, an

laho came early on board, bringing a red-feathered cap as a present to Captain Cook. These caps were greatly sought after by us, as we knew they would be highly valued at Otaheite; but not one was ever brought for sale, though very large prices were offered; nor could a person in either ship make himself the proprietor of one, except the two Captains and Omai. They are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, intermixed with the red feathers of the parroquet; and are made in such a manner as to tie on the forehead without any crown, and have the form of a semi-circle, whose radius is eighteen or twenty inches. But the best idea of them will be conveyed by Mr Webber's representation of Poulaho, ornamented with one of these caps or bonnets. The chief left the ship in the evening; but his brother, whose name also was Futafaihe, and some of his attendants, remained all night on board.

On the 29th, at day-break, we weighed with a fine breeze at east-northeast, and made sail to the westward, followed by several sailing canoes, in one of which was Poulaho, the king, who, getting on board the Resolution, inquired for his brother, and the others who had continued with us all night. We now found that they had staid without his permission, for he gave them such a reprimand as brought tears from their eyes: however, he was soon reconciled to their making a longer stay; for, on his departure from the ship, he left his brother and five attendants on board. We were also honoured with the company of a chief named Toobou-eitoo, just then arrived from Tongataboo; who, as soon as he came, sent away his canoe, declaring that he, and five others who came with him, would



sleep on board ; so that Captain Coop now had his cabin filled with visitors. This inconvenience he the more willingly endured, as they brought with them plenty of provisions as presents to him, for which they met with suitable returns.

In the afternoon the easterly wind was succeeded by a fresh breeze at south-southeast. Our course being now south-southwest, we were obliged to ply to windward, and barely fetched the northern side of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day we plied up to Lofanga, and got soundings, under the lee or northwest side, in forty fathoms water ; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to leeward, we stretched away for Kotoo, expecting to find better anchorage there. It was dark before we reached that island, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, we passed the night in making short boards. On the 31st, at day-break, we stood for the channel which is between Kotoo and the reef of rocks lying to the westward of it ; but, on our approach, we found the wind insufficient to lead us through. We therefore bore up on the outside of the reef, and stretched to the southwest till near twelve o'clock, when perceiving that we made no progress to windward, and being apprehensive of losing the islands while we had so many of the natives on board, we tacked and stood back, and spent the night between Footooha and Kotoo. The wind now blew fresh, with squalls and rain ; and, during the night, the Resolution, by a small change of the wind, fetching too far to the windward, was very near running full upon a low sandy isle, named Pootoo-Pootooa, encompassed with breakers. Our people having

fortun  
ship a  
tive  
forme  
presen  
ing a  
Th  
were  
gettin  
light,  
comm  
Kotoo  
projec  
the b  
the c  
sandy  
again  
chor  
east b  
we re  
visite  
ple w  
fic wi  
patch  
situat  
lande  
island  
is sca  
is low  
minat  
It pre  
jacent  
thinly  
Whil

fortunately been just ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, and most of them being at their respective stations, the necessary movements were performed with judgment and alertness, and this alone preserved us from destruction. The Discovery being astern incurred no danger.

This narrow escape so alarmed the natives who were on board, that they were eagerly desirous of getting ashore: accordingly, on the return of daylight, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered, after landing them at Kotoo, to sound for anchorage along the reef that projects from that island. During the absence of the boat, we endeavoured to turn the ships through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the sandy isle; but meeting with a strong current against us, we were obliged to desist, and cast anchor in fifty fathoms water, the sandy isle bearing east by north, about the distance of one mile. Here we remained till the 4th of June, being frequently visited by the king, by Tooboueitoa, and by people who came from the neighbouring islands to traffic with us. Mr Bligh was, in the mean time, dispatched to sound the channels between the islands situate to the eastward; and Captain Cook himself landed on Kotoo, to take a survey of it. This island, on account of the coral reefs that environ it, is scarcely accessible by boats. Its northwest end is low; but it rises suddenly in the middle, and terminates at the southeast end in reddish clayey cliffs. It produces the same fruits and roots with the adjacent islands, and is tolerably cultivated, though thinly inhabited. It is about two miles in length. While the Commodore was walking all over it, our

people were occupied in cutting grass for the cattle, and we planted some melon seeds. On our return to the boat, we passed by some ponds of dirty brackish water, and saw a burying-place, which was considerably neater than those of Hapace.

We weighed in the morning of the 4th, and with a fresh gale at east-southeast, made sail towards Annamooka, where we anchored the next morning, nearly in the same station which we had so lately occupied. Captain Cook soon after went on shore, and found the islanders very busy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the course of the day, about two hundred of them assembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerness. It appeared that they had been very diligent, during our absence, in cultivating; for we now observed several large plantain fields, in places which, in our late visit, we had seen lying waste. The yams were now in the highest perfection; and we obtained a good quantity of them, in exchange for iron. Before the Captain returned on board, he visited the several places where he had sown melon and cucumber seeds; but found, to his great regret, that most of them had been destroyed by vermin; though some pine-apple plants which he had also left were in a thriving condition.

On Friday the 6th, about noon, Feenou arrived from Vavao, and informed us, that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, had sailed with him from that island, but had been lost in the late tempestuous weather, and every person on board of them had perished: This melancholy tale did not gain much credit with us, as we were by this time sufficiently acquainted with the character of

the r  
been  
plic  
left t  
and v  
come  
as his  
curin  
ticipa  
of th  
had l  
ceedi  
arrive  
be as  
sensib  
gatin  
for h  
of T  
to ins  
went  
ting v  
numb  
circle  
ed, h  
Poul  
seeme  
soon  
sation  
on b  
Poul  
his c  
foot  
ed fr  
could

the relater. The truth perhaps was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected supplies ; or if he had obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapaece, which lay in his way back, and where he must have heard that Poulaho had come to visit us : who, therefore, he knew, would, as his superior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring these supplies, without having had any participation of the trouble. The invention, however, of this loss at sea was not ill imagined ; for we had lately had very stormy weather. On the succeeding morning, Poulaho and some other chiefs arrived ; at which time Captain Cook happened to be ashore with Feenou, who now appeared to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character which he had no just claim to ; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as sovereign of Tongataboo and the adjacent isles, but affected to insist much on it. The Captain left him, and went to pay a visit to the king, whom he found sitting with a few of the natives before him, but great numbers hastening to pay their respects to him, the circle increased very fast. When Feenou approached, he placed himself among the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his Majesty. He at first seemed to be somewhat confused and abashed ; but soon recovered from his agitation. Some conversation passed between these two chiefs, who went on board with the Captain to dinner ; but only Poulaho sat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeisance in the usual mode, by saluting the foot of his sovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin ; and it now appeared that he could neither eat nor drink in the king's presence.



On the 8th we weighed anchor, and steered for Tongataboo, with a gentle breeze at northeast. We were accompanied by fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels belonging to the islanders, every one of which outran the ships. The royal canoe was distinguished from the rest by a small bundle of grass, of a red colour, fastened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the stern of the canoe in the same manner as our ensign staffs. At five in the afternoon we descried two small islands, at the distance of four leagues to the westward; one was called Hoonga Hapae, and the other Hoonga Tonga. They are situate in the latitude of  $20^{\circ} 36'$  south, about ten leagues from the western point of Annamooka. According to the information of two islanders who had been sent on-board by Feenou as pilots, only five men resided on Hoonga Hapae, and Hoonga Tonga had no inhabitants. We still proceeded on a southwest course, and on the 9th saw several little islands, beyond which Eooa and Tongataboo appeared. We had at this time twenty-five fathoms water, the bottom consisting of broken coral and sand, and the depth gradually decreased as we approached the above-mentioned small isles. Steering by the direction of our pilots, for the widest space between those isles, we were insensibly drawn upon a large flat, on which lay innumerable rocks of coral below the surface of the sea. Notwithstanding our utmost care and attention to avoid these rocks, we were unable to prevent the ship from striking on one of them: nor did the Discovery, though behind us, keep clear of them. It fortunately happened, that neither of the ships stuck fast, nor sustained any damage. We still continued



ered for  
st. We  
sailing  
one of  
was dis-  
of grass,  
ble, and  
manner  
noon we  
of four  
Hoonga  
They are  
bout ten  
amooka.  
ders who  
only five  
ga Ton-  
ded on a  
eral little  
aboo ap-  
fathoms  
oral and  
s we ap-  
Steer-  
e widest  
ly draw  
ble rocks  
Notwith-  
to avoid  
the ship  
ne Disco-  
hem. It  
hips stuck  
continued

our course; and the moment we found a place where we could anchor with any degree of safety, we came to; and the Masters were dispatched, with the boats, to sound. Soon after we had cast anchor, several of the natives of Tongataboo came to us in their canoes; and they, as well as our pilots, assured us, that we should meet with deep water further in, free from rocks. Their intelligence was true; for, about four o'clock, the boats made a signal of having found good anchoring-ground. We therefore weighed, and stood in till dark, when we anchored in nine fathoms water, with a clear sandy bottom. During the night we had some rain; but early in the morning, the wind becoming southerly, and bringing on fair weather, we weighed again, and worked towards the shore of Tongataboo. While we were plying up to the harbour, the king continued sailing round us in his canoe; and at the same time there was a great number of small canoes about the ships. Two of these not getting out of the way of his royal vessel, he ran quite over them with the greatest unconcern. Among those who came on board the Resolution, was Otago, who had been so useful to Captain Cook when he visited Tongataboo in his last voyage; and one Too-bou, who had, at that time, attached himself to Captain Furneaux. Each of them brought some yams and a hog, in testimony of friendship; for which they received a suitable return.

We arrived at our intended station about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th of June. It was a very convenient place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the southeast, and two little isles on the east and northeast. Here both our ships

anchored over a sandy bottom, where the depth of water was ten fathoms. Our distance from the shore exceeded a quarter of a mile.

We had not been long at anchor off Tongataboo, when Captain Cook landed on the island, accompanied by some of the officers and Omai. They found the king waiting for them on the beach, who conducted them to a small neat house near the woods, with an extensive area before it, and told the Captain, that it was at his service during his continuance on the island. Before they had been long in the house, a large circle of the natives assembled before them, and seated themselves upon the area. A root of the *kava* plant being brought to the king, he commanded it to be split in pieces, and distributed to several people, of both sexes, who began to chew it, and soon prepared a bowl of their favourite liquor. Meanwhile, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams, were produced, and divided into ten portions. These shares were given to some of those who were present, except one, which remained undisposed of, and which was probably reserved for the king himself. The liquor was next served out; and the first cup being brought to his majesty, he ordered it to be given to a person who sat near him: the second was also brought to him, which he kept: the third was given to Captain Cook; but their mode of preparing the liquor having given him a distaste for it, it was brought to Omai. The remainder of it was distributed to different people; and one of the cups being carried to Poulaho's brother, he retired with this, and with his share of the provisions. Some others also withdrew from the circle with their portions, because

depth of  
from the

ataboo,  
accom-

They  
ch, who

woods,  
the Cap-

contin-

long in  
sembled

the area.  
the king,

distribut-

egan to  
favour-

a quan-

divided  
to some

which re-

ably re-

was next  
at to his

son who  
to him,

Captain  
nor hav-

ught to  
d to dif-

carried  
and with

so with-  
because



THE KING OF THE FRIENDLY ISLANDS. AN OFFSHOOT, SEE VOL. 1, P. 20.

they c  
presen  
of both  
Soon  
away,  
their s  
that th  
lava, c  
to the  
Capt  
in sear  
some p  
ble, bu  
formed  
which  
this im  
mornin  
er wat  
islands  
ed it to  
our wa  
pitched  
for our  
then la  
as a g  
conside  
King t  
observ  
busines  
for fue  
were a  
habitat  
with h  
somuch

they could neither eat nor drink in his majesty's presence : but there were others of an inferior rank, of both sexes, who both ate and drank before him. Soon afterwards, the greater part of them went away, carrying with them what they had not ate of their share of the feast. It is worthy of remark, that the servants, who distributed the meat and the *lava*, delivered it sitting, not only to the king, but to the others.

Captain Cook, before he returned on board, went in search of a watering-place, and was conducted to some ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at some distance inland. Being informed that the small island of Pangimodoo, near which the ships were stationed, could better supply this important article, he went over to it the next morning, and found there a pool containing fresher water than any he had met with among these islands. This pool being extremely dirty, he caused it to be cleaned ; and here it was that we filled our water-casks. The same morning a tent was pitched near the house which the king had assigned for our use. The horses, cattle, and sheep, were then landed, and a party of marines stationed there as a guard. The observatory was set up at an inconsiderable distance from the other tent ; and Mr King took up his residence on shore, to direct the observations, and superintend all other necessary business. A party was occupied in cutting wood for fuel, and planks for the ships ; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with the inhabitants, who flocked from all parts of the island with hogs, yams, cocoa-nuts, and other articles, in-somuch, that our land station resembled a fair, and

THE HISTORY OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN, VOL. I. P. 201.  
THE KING OF THE FRIENDLY ISLANDS.



our ships were remarkably crowded with visitants. Feenou residing in our neighbourhood, we had daily proofs of his opulence and generosity, by the continuance of his valuable donations. Poulaho was equally attentive to us in this respect, as scarcely a day passed without his favouring us with considerable presents. We were now informed that a person of the name of Mareewagee was of very high rank in the island, and was treated with great reverence; nay, if our interpreter Omai did not misunderstand his informers, that he was superior to Poulaho himself; but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement, and therefore was not inclined to pay us a visit. This intelligence exciting the curiosity of Captain Cook, he signified to Poulaho his intention of waiting upon Mareewagee; and the king having agreed to accompany him, they set out the next morning in the pinnace, Captain Clerke joining them in one of his own boats. They proceeded to the eastward of the little isles which form the harbour, and then, turning towards the south, entered a spacious bay, up which they rowed about three miles, and landed amidst a great concourse of people, who received them with shouts and acclamations. The crowd instantly separated, that Poulaho might pass, who took our gentlemen into a small enclosure, and changed the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece, very neatly folded: an old woman assisted in dressing him, and put a large mat over his cloth. Being now asked where Mareewagee was, he said, to the great surprise of the gentlemen, that he was gone down to the ships. However, he requested them to accompany him to a *malæe*, or house of public resort; and when they

came  
the pa  
house,  
little  
mediu  
ced to  
answer  
chief  
turned  
pointn  
gee h  
some g  
having  
what  
The  
pleasa  
of the  
person  
house  
of out-  
tations  
have o  
on the  
planta  
A cor  
laid ou  
as seen  
such o  
person  
produc  
the pu  
ous gr  
long to  
their p

came to a large area before it, he seated himself in the path, while they, at his desire, walked up to the house, and sat down in the front. After waiting a little while, they repeated their inquiries, by the medium of Omai, whether they were to be introduced to Mareewagee? But receiving no satisfactory answer, and being inclined to suspect that the aged chief was purposely concealed from them, they returned to their boats much piqued at their disappointment. It afterwards appeared that Mareewagee had not been there; and that, in this affair, some gross mistakes had been made, Omai, either having been misinformed, or having misunderstood what was told him concerning the old chief.

The place our gentlemen went to was a very pleasant village, delightfully situate on the banks of the bay or inlet, where most of the principal persons of the island reside. Each of these has his house in the midst of a small plantation, with a kind of out-houses, and offices for servants. These plantations are neatly fenced round, and, in general, have only one entrance, which is by a door fastened on the inside with a prop of wood. Between each plantation there are public roads and narrow lanes. A considerable part of some of these enclosures is laid out in grass-plots, and planted with such things as seem less adapted for use than for ornament. In such other plantations as were not the residence of persons of high rank, every article of the vegetable produce of the island was in great plenty. Near the public roads are some large houses, with spacious grass-plots before them, which were said to belong to the king, and are probably the places where their public meetings are held.

On Friday the 13th, about twelve o'clock, Mareewagee came within a small distance of our post on shore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the course of the afternoon, the two Captains, and others of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went ashore to visit him. They found a person sitting under a tree, with a piece of cloth, about forty yards long, spread before him, round which numbers of people were seated. They imagined that this was the great personage, but were undeceived by Feenou, who informed them, that another, who was sitting on a piece of mat, was Mareewagee. To him they were introduced by Feenou; and he received them very graciously, and desired them to sit down by him. The chief, who sat under the tree, was named Toobou, whom we shall for the future call Old Toobou, to distinguish him from his namesake, who has been already mentioned as Captain Furneaux's friend. Both he and Mareewagee were venerable in their appearance. The latter was slender in his person, and seemed to be near seventy years of age. Old Toobou was somewhat corpulent, and almost blind from a disorder in his eyes: he was younger than Mareewagee. Captain Cook not expecting on this occasion to meet with two chiefs, had brought on shore a present for one only: this therefore he was obliged to divide between them; but, as it happened to be considerable, both of them appeared to be satisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with the performance of two French horns and a drum: but the firing off of a pistol that Captain Clerke had in his pocket, seemed to please them most. Before our gentlemen took their leave of

the tv  
up, a  
a few  
bou c  
also v  
sent v  
cy wa  
wagee  
on sh  
had th  
sight  
his at  
board  
twelve  
but th  
sit do  
conve  
ever h  
every  
and f  
where  
the cl  
to be  
that t  
ly ver  
ciled  
He n  
he th  
in wh  
weild  
On  
from  
of see  
waite

the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up, and presented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa-nuts. The next morning, Old Toobou came on board to return the Captain's visit : he also visited Captain Clerke ; and if our former present was not sufficiently considerable, the deficiency was now supplied. In the mean time, Mareewagee went to see our people who were stationed on shore ; and Mr King showed him whatever we had there. He was struck with admiration at the sight of the cattle ; and the cross-cut saw rivetted his attention. Towards noon, Poulaho came on board, bringing with him his son, who was about twelve years of age. He dined with Captain Cook ; but the son, though present, was not permitted to sit down with him. The Captain found it very convenient to have him for his guest ; for whenever he was present, (which was frequently the case) every other native was excluded from the table, and few of them would continue in the cabin : whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on board, the chiefs of inferior rank were very importunate to be of the dining party, or to be admitted at that time into the cabin, which became consequently very much crowded. The king was soon reconciled to our cookery, and was fond of our wine. He now resided at the *malae* near our tent, where he this evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himself, though so corpulent and unweildy, engaged.

On the 15th, Captain Cook received a message from Old Toobou, importing that he was desirous of seeing him on shore. He and Omai accordingly waited on that chief, whom they found sitting like



one of the ancient patriarchs, under the shade of a tree, with a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the islands, spread out before him. He desired them to place themselves by him; after which he told Omai, that the cloth, with some cocoa-nuts, and red feathers, constituted his present to Captain Cook. The latter thanked him for the donation, and asked him to go on board with him. Omai, being sent for by Poulaho, now left the Captain, who was informed by Feenou, that young Fatafaihe the king's son desired to see him. He immediately obeyed the summons, and found the young prince and Omai seated under a canopy of fine cloth, with a piece of a coarser kind, seventy-six yards long, and seven and a half broad, spread before them and under them. On one side was a quantity of cocoanuts; and, on the other, a large boar. A multitude of people sat round the cloth; and among them was Mareewagee, with other persons of rank. The Captain was requested to seat himself by the prince; and then Omai informed him that he had been instructed by Poulaho to tell him, that as his Majesty and the Captain were friends, he hoped that his son Fatafaihe might be comprehended in this friendship; and that the Captain, as a testimony of his consent, would accept the prince's present. Captain Cook readily agreed to this proposal, and invited them all to dine on board. Accordingly, the young prince, Old Toobou, Mareewagee, three or four subordinate chiefs, and two old ladies of high rank, accompanied the Commodore to the ship. Mareewagee was dressed in a new piece of cloth, with six patches of red feathers on the skirts of it. This dress was probably made on purpose for this

visit  
it of  
dinn  
sit d  
all  
com  
thin  
ed a  
pres  
shov  
conc  
ed t  
step  
was  
heir  
was  
and  
the  
Aft  
the  
vey  
was  
was  
of t  
thist  
tion  
of t  
Mar  
men  
tima  
cula  
Mon  
of  
was



ade of a  
ufacture  
desired  
which he  
pa-nuts,  
Captain  
onation;  
Omai,  
Captain,  
atafaihe  
mediately  
g prince  
th, with  
ls long,  
hem and  
f cocoa-  
a multi-  
ng them  
x. The  
prince;  
een in-  
Majesty  
his son  
friend-  
of his  
Cap-  
and in-  
gly, the  
three or  
of high  
e ship.  
cloth,  
s of it.  
for this

visit; for, as soon as he arrived on board, he put it off, and presented it to Captain Cook. When dinner was served up, not one of them would even sit down, or eat a morsel of any thing, as they were all *taboo*, they said; which word, though it has a comprehensive meaning, generally signifies that a thing is prohibited. Why they were thus restrained at present was not accounted for. Having made presents to them all, and gratified their curiosity, by showing them every part of the ship, the Captain conducted them ashore. When the boat had reached the land, Feenou and several others immediately stepped out; and the young prince following them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid the heir apparent the same obeisance which the king was accustomed to receive; and when old Toobou, and one of the old ladies, had honoured him with the same marks of respect, he was suffered to land. After this ceremony, the old people stepped out of the boat into a canoe, which was waiting to convey them to their place of residence. Captain Cook was pleased at being present on this occasion, as he was thus furnished with the most convincing proofs of the supreme dignity of Poulaho and his son. By this time, indeed, he had gained some certain information with regard to the relative situation of several of the chiefs. He now knew that old Toobou and Mareewagee were brothers. Both of them were men of very considerable property, and in high estimation with the people: Mareewagee, in particular, had obtained the honourable appellation of *Motooa Tonga*, which implies, father of Tonga, or of his country. We also now understood that he was the king's father-in-law, Poulaho having es-

poused one of his daughters, by whom he had young Fatafaihe ; so that Mareewagee was grandfather to the prince. As for Feenou, he was one of the sons of Mareewagee, and Tooboueitoa was another.

Captain Cook, on his landing, found Poulaho in the house adjoining to our tent, who immediately made him a present of a quantity of yams and a hog. Towards evening, a number of the islanders came, and having seated themselves in a circle, sung in concert with the music of bamboo-drums, which were placed in the centre. Three of them were long ones, and two were short. With these they struck the ground endwise. There were two others that lay side by side on the ground, one of which was partly split : on these a person continued beating with two sticks. They sung three songs while the Captain staid ; and the entertainment lasted, after he had left them, till ten o'clock. They burned the leaves of the *wharra* palm for a light.

In the mean time, Mr Anderson, with several others, made an excursion into the country, which furnished him with observations to the following effect : Westward of the tent, the country for about two miles is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and bushes growing naturally with the greatest vigour. Beyond this a pretty large plain extends itself, on which are cocoa-trees, and some small plantations. Near the creek, which runs west of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the sea. When the water retires, the surface is seen to consist of coral rock interspersed with holes of yellowish mud ; and near the edges, where it is rather more firm, are vast numbers of little openings, whence issue innumer-

able s  
are so  
stanta  
of the  
this p  
gree  
a nar  
bread  
ten fe  
lengt  
to thi  
about  
that  
trees  
cause  
not  
built  
face,  
From  
of so  
pres  
time  
And  
it w  
It  
Mr  
cour  
seein  
cipa  
othe  
atio  
sub  
mal  
pap

able small crabs, which swarm upon the spot, but are so very nimble, that, when approached, they instantaneously disappear, and baffle all the dexterity of the natives who endeavour to catch them. At this place is a work of art, which testifies some degree of ingenuity and perseverance: on one side is a narrow causeway, which, gradually increasing in breadth, rises with a gentle ascent to the height of ten feet, where its breadth is five paces, the whole length being about seventy-four paces. Adjacent to this is a kind of circus, thirty paces in diameter, about one or two feet higher than the causeway that joins it; and in the middle of this circus some trees are planted. On the opposite side, another causeway descends, which is partly in ruins, and not above forty paces in length. The whole is built of large coral stones, with earth on the surface, which is overgrown with shrubs and low trees. From its decaying in several places it is probably of some antiquity. It seems to be of no service at present, whatever may have been its use in former times. All the intelligence concerning it that Mr Anderson could procure from the natives, was, that it was called *Etchee*, and belonged to the king.

In the morning of the 16th, Captain Cook and Mr Gore took a walk into the country; in the course of which they met with an opportunity of seeing the whole process of making cloth, the principal manufacture of these islands, as well as of many others in the South-Sea. An account of this operation, as performed here, may not improperly be subjoined. The manufacturers, who are of the female sex, take the slender stalks or trunks of the paper-mulberry, which rarely grows more than seven

feet in height, and about the thickness of four fingers. From these stalks they strip the bark, and scrape off the exterior rhind; after which the bark is rolled up, and macerated for some time in water; it is then beaten with a square instrument of wood, full of coarse grooves, but sometimes with a plain one. The operation is often repeated by another person; or the bark is folded several times, and beat longer, which is probably intended to close rather than divide its texture. It is then spread out to dry; the pieces being from four to six or seven feet in length, and about half as broad. These pieces are joined by smearing part of them with the glutinous juice of a berry called *tooo*; and, after being thus lengthened, they are placed over a large piece of wood, with a sort of stamp, composed of a fibrous substance, laid beneath them. The manufacturers then take a bit of cloth, and having dipped it in a juice expressed from the bark of a tree called *kokka*, rub it briskly over the piece that is making. This leaves upon the surface a dry gloss, and a dull brown colour; and the stamp makes, at the same time, a slight impression. Thus they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till a piece of cloth, of the requisite length and breadth, is produced. They generally leave a border, about a foot broad, at the sides, and rather longer at the ends, unstained. If any parts of the original pieces have holes, or are too thin, they glue spare bits upon them till their thickness equals that of the rest. Whenever they are desirous of producing a black colour, they mix the juice of the *kokka* with the soot procured from an oily nut called *doodooc*. They assert, that the black cloth, which is usually

most  
warm

The  
Feend  
him a  
being  
sel, a  
they  
no  
sat de  
wine,  
it.  
were  
bidde  
like  
one c

Th  
ed up  
or en  
atten  
near  
ed fo  
of th  
of w  
end  
and  
spac  
with  
reew  
The  
ers  
dan  
at fi  
wh

four fin-  
 rk, and  
 the bark  
 in water;  
 of wood,  
 a plain  
 another  
 es, and  
 to close  
 spread  
 o six or  
 . These  
 with the  
 d, after  
 r a large  
 sed of a  
 e manu-  
 ing dip-  
 f a tree  
 e that is  
 y gloss,  
 akes, at  
 ey pro-  
 piece of  
 produ-  
 t a foot  
 e ends,  
 es have  
 ts upon  
 ie rest.  
 a black  
 ith the  
 oodedoe.  
 usually

most glazed, makes a cold dress; but the other a warm one.

The Commodore and Mr Gore, meeting with Feenou on their return from their excursion, took him and another chief on board to dinner; which being served up, neither of them would eat a morsel, alleging that they were *taboo avy*; but when they found, that, in dressing a pig and some yams, no *avy* (water) had been made use of, they both sat down, and ate very heartily, and drank some wine, on being assured that there was no water in it. From this circumstance we inferred, that they were at this time, for some particular reason, forbidden to use water; or that, perhaps they did not like the water we then used, it being taken out of one of the places where the islanders bathed.

The following day, which was the 17th, was fixed upon by Mareewagee for giving a grand *baiva*, or entertainment, at which we were all invited to attend. Before the temporary hut of this chief, near our land station, a large space had been cleared for that purpose. In the morning, vast numbers of the natives came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his shoulder a long pole, at each end of which a yam was suspended. These poles and yams being deposited on each side of the open space, or area, formed two large heaps, decorated with small fish of different kinds. They were Mareewagee's present to the Captains Cook and Clerke. The necessary preparations being made, the islanders began, about eleven o'clock, to exhibit various dances, which they call *mai*. The band of music at first consisted of seventy men as a chorus, amidst whom were placed three instruments that we called



drums, though they did not much resemble them. They are cylindrical pieces of wood, from three to four feet in length, some of them twice as thick as a man of ordinary size, and some not so large. They are entirely hollow, but close at each end, and open only by a chink, about the breadth of three inches, running nearly the whole length of the drums. By this opening, the rest of the wood is hollowed; which must be an operation of some difficulty. This instrument is called by the natives *naffa*; and, having the chink turned towards them, they sit and beat vigorously upon it, with two cylindrical pieces of wood, as thick as the wrist, and about a foot in length; by which means a rude, but loud and powerful sound, is produced. They occasionally vary the strength and rate of their beating; and likewise change the tones, by beating towards the end, or in the middle of the instrument.

There were four ranks, of twenty-four men each, in the first dance. These held in their hands a small thin wooden instrument, above two feet in length, resembling in its shape an oblong paddle. With these instruments, which are called *pagge*, they made many different motions; such as pointing them towards the ground on one side, and inclining their bodies that way at the same instant; then shifting them to the opposite side in the same manner; passing them with great quickness from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity; with various manœuvres. Their motions, which were slow at first, quickened as the drums beat faster; and they repeated sentences the whole time in a musical tone, which were answered by the chorus; but, in a short time,

they  
cessa  
and  
a qu  
vidin  
front  
the v  
The  
whic  
lutio  
form  
slow  
minu  
sion,  
of cir  
choru  
the s  
In  
choru  
rathe  
of w  
teen.  
whic  
cipal  
with  
times  
high  
the c  
occu  
resun  
finish  
retire  
T  
and

they all joined, and ended with a shout. After a cessation of a few minutes, they began as before, and continued, with short intervals, upwards of a quarter of an hour; and then the rear rank dividing, moved slowly round each end, met in the front, and formed the first rank; during which time the whole number continued to recite sentences. The other ranks successively did the same, till that which was foremost became the rear; and this evolution did not cease till the last rank regained its former situation. A much quicker dance, though slow at first, was then begun, and they sung for ten minutes, when the whole body, in a two-fold division, retreated, and then advanced, forming a kind of circular figure, which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed at the same time.

In the second dance there were forty men as a chorus, with only two drums; and the dancers, or rather actors, consisted of two ranks, the foremost of which had seventeen persons, and the other fifteen. Feenou was in the middle of the first rank, which is considered, on these occasions, as the principal place. They danced and repeated sentences, with very short intervals, for half an hour, sometimes slowly, and at other times quickly, with the highest degree of exactness and regularity. Towards the close, the rear-rank divided, came round, and occupied the place of the front, which afterwards resumed its pristine situation. This dance being finished, the drums were taken away, and the chorus retired, as in the preceding dance.

Three very large drums were now brought in, and seventy men served as a chorus to the third

dance. This consisted of two ranks, of sixteen men each, having young Toobou at their head, who was splendidly ornamented with a kind of garment covered with red feathers: These persons danced, sung, and twirled the *pagge*, so as to meet with the continual applause of the spectators, who were particularly pleased with a motion in which they held the face aside, as if ashamed, with the *pagge* before it. The hindermost rank closed before the front one, which soon after resumed its place, as in the first and second dances: then beginning again, they formed a triple row, divided, retreated to each end of the area, and left the ground in a great measure clear. Two men, rushing in at that instant, began to exercise the clubs which they make use of in battle. They first twirled them in their hands, and made circular strokes before them with great quickness, managing them with such skill, that, though they stood close to each other, they never interfered. They shifted the clubs, with uncommon dexterity, from one hand to the other; and, after some time, kneeled down, and made various motions, tossing up their clubs in the air, and catching them as they fell. They then retired as hastily as they had entered. They had pieces of white cloth about their heads, fastened at the crown with a wreath of foliage round their foreheads: and, that they might be free from all incumbrance, they had only a very small piece of cloth tied round the waist. A man armed with a spear then rushed in, and put himself in a menacing attitude, as if he intended to strike with his weapon at one of the people in the crowd; at the same time bending the knee a little, and trembling as it were with fury. He continued in

of sixteen  
head, who  
f garment  
ns danced,  
t with the  
were par-  
they held  
gge before  
the front  
as in the  
gain, they  
each end  
at measure  
ant, began  
e of in bat-  
ands, and  
reat quick-  
at, though  
interfered.  
dexterity,  
some time,  
ns, tossing  
em as they  
ey had en-  
about their  
ath of foli-  
y might be  
ly a very  
. A man  
out himself  
d to strike  
he crowd;  
little, and  
ntinued in

this position near a minute, and then moved to the other side, where, having stood in the same posture, he hastily retreated from the area. During all this time, the dancers who had divided themselves into two parties, continued to repeat something slowly, and they now came forward, and joined again, concluding the dance with general applause. This dance was probably considered as a capital performance, as some of the principal people were engaged in it; one of the drums being beat by Futafaihe, the king's brother, another by Feenou, and the third by Mareewagee himself.

In the fourth and last dance there were forty men as a chorus, with two drums. The performers were sixty men, arranged in three rows, having twenty-four in front. Before they commenced, we were entertained with a preliminary harangue, in which the whole number made responses to an individual speaker. They recited sentences alternately with the chorus, and made with the *pagge* many quick motions. They divided into two parties, with their backs to each other; formed again, shifted their ranks (as in the preceding dances) divided, and retreated, being succeeded by two men who exercised their clubs as before, after whom came two others; the dancers in the mean time repeating in their turns with the chorus: they then advanced, and terminated the dance.

These amusements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of islanders who attended as spectators, together with those who were round the trading-place at the tent, or straggling about, amounted to at least ten thousand, all within the compass of a quarter of a mile. If we had

understood what was spoken in this entertainment, we might probably have gained much information with regard to the genius and customs of these people. Though the spectators constantly applauded the different motions, when well made, a considerable share of the pleasure they received, seemed to arise from the sentimental part, or what the performers recited. However, the mere acting part well deserved our notice, on account of the extensiveness of the plan, the variety of the motions, and the exact unity, ease, and gracefulness, with which they were performed.

In the evening we were entertained with the *bomai*, or night dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling-place of Feenou. They continued three hours; during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly in the same manner as those at Hapaée. In two of them, which were performed by women, a party of men came and formed a circle within theirs. In another, which consisted of twenty-four men, many motions that we had not before seen were made with the hands, and met with great applause. The music was once changed in the course of the evening; and, in one of the dances, Feenou himself appeared at the head of fifty men: he was well dressed in linen, and some small pictures were hung round his neck.

Though the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reasonably have been expected, yet our utmost care and attention could not prevent our being plundered by the natives, in the most daring and insolent manner. There was scarcely any thing which they did not endeavour



tainment,  
formation  
these peo-  
applauded  
consider-  
seemed to  
the per-  
acting part  
the exten-  
tions, and  
with which  
with the  
before the  
They con-  
out twelve  
same man-  
em, which  
men came  
n another,  
ny motions  
e with the  
The music  
e evening;  
f appeared  
dressed in  
g round his  
conducted  
have been  
tion could  
natives, in  
There was  
endeavour

to steal. They once, in the middle of the day, attempted to take an anchor from off the Discovery's bow; but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was, the breaking the shoulder-bone of one of our goats; in consequence of which, he died soon after. On Wednesday the 18th, an islander got out of a canoe into the Resolution, and stole a pewter-bason; but being detected, he was pursued, and brought alongside the ship. Upon this occasion, three old women in the canoe made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their faces and breasts with the palms of their hands in a very violent manner, but without shedding a tear. This mode of expressing sorrow occasions the mark which most of these people bear on the face, over their cheek-bones; for the repeated blows inflicted by them on this part, abrade the skin, and cause some blood to flow out; and when the wound is recent, it looks as if a hollow circle had been made by burning. On some occasions they cut this part of the face with an instrument.

The same day captain Cook bestowed some presents on Marceewagee, in return for those which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited called upon us to make some exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to go through their exercise, on the spot where the late dances had been performed; and, in the evening, some fire-works were also played off at the same place. The king, the principal chiefs, and a vast multitude of people, were present. The platoon firing seemed to please them; but, when they beheld our water-rockets, they were filled with astonishment and admiration.

They did not much regard the fife and drum, or French-horns, that were playing during the intervals. Poulaho sat behind every one, no person being permitted to sit behind him; and that his view might receive no obstruction, none sat immediately before him; but a lane, as it were, was made by the spectators from him, quite down to the space allotted for playing off the fire-works.

While the natives were in expectation of this evening exhibition, they engaged, for the greatest part of the afternoon, in wrestling and boxing. When a person is desirous of wrestling, he gives a challenge by crossing the ground in a kind of measured pace, and clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and sends forth a hollow sound. If no opponent steps forth, he returns and sits down; but if an antagonist appears, they meet with marks of the greatest good-nature, generally smiling, and deliberately adjusting the piece of cloth that is fastened round the waist. They then lay hold of each other by this cloth, and he who succeeds in drawing his opponent to him, instantly endeavours to lift him upon his breast, and throw him on his back; and if he can turn round with him in that position two or three times, before he throws him, he meets with great applause for his dexterity. If they are more equally matched, they quickly close, and attempt to throw each other by entwining their legs, or raising each other from the ground; in which struggles they display an extraordinary exertion of strength. When one of them is thrown, he immediately retires; while the conqueror sits down for near a minute, then rises, and

drum, or  
the inter-  
person  
that his  
at imme-  
was made  
the space

t of this  
greatest  
boxing.  
e gives a  
of meal-  
bow joint  
th a hol-  
e returns  
ars, they  
re, gene-  
he piece

. They  
, and he  
him, in-  
cast, and  
in round  
s, before  
se for his  
ned, they  
other by  
from the  
an extra-  
e of them  
the con-  
ises, and

goes to the side from whence he came, where the victory is proclaimed aloud. After sitting for a short time, he rises again, and challenges; and if several antagonists appear, he has the privilege of choosing which of them he pleases to engage with; he may also, if he should throw his competitor, challenge again, till he himself is vanquished; and then the people on the opposite side chant the song of victory in favour of their champion. It frequently happens that five or six rise from each side, and give challenges together; so that it is not uncommon to see several sets engaged on the field at the same time. They preserve great temper in this exercise, and leave the spot without the least displeasure in their countenances. When they find that they are too equally matched, they desist by mutual consent; and if it does not clearly appear which of them has had the advantage, both sides proclaim the victory, and then they engage again. But no one, who has been vanquished, is permitted to engage a second time with his conqueror.

Those who intend to box, advance side-ways, changing the side at every pace, having one arm stretched out before, the other behind; and holding in one hand a piece of cord, which they wrap closely about it when they meet with an opponent. This is probably intended to prevent a dislocation of the hand or fingers. Their blows are dealt out with great quickness and activity, and are aimed principally at the head. They box equally well with either hand. One of their most dexterous blows is, to turn round on the heel, just after they have struck their adversary, and to give him another pretty violent blow with the other hand back-

ward. In boxing-matches, unless a person strikes his antagonist to the ground, they never sing the song of victory ; which shows, that this diversion is less approved among them than wrestling. Not only boys engage in both these exercises, but it not unfrequently happens that little girls box with great obstinacy. On all these occasions they do not consider it as any disgrace to be overcome ; and the vanquished person sits down with as much indifference as if he had never engaged. Some of our people contended with them in both exercises, but were generally worsted.

Captain Cook intending to leave behind him some of the animals he had brought, thought proper to make a distribution of them before his departure. He therefore, on the 19th, assembled the chiefs before our house, and marked out his intended presents to them. To the king he gave a bull and a cow ; to Mareewagee a cape ram and two ewes ; and to Fænou a horse and a mare. He instructed Omai to tell them, that no such animals existed within several months sail of their island ; that we had brought them, with a great degree of trouble and expence, for their use ; that, therefore, they ought not to kill any of them till they had multiplied considerably ; and, finally, that they and their posterity ought to remember, that they had received them from the natives of Britain. Omai also explained to them their respective uses, as far as his limited knowledge in such points would permit him. The captain had intended to give old Toobou two or three goats ; but finding that chief indifferent about them, he added them to the share of Poulaho. It soon appeared that some of the na-

on strikes  
sing the  
diversion  
ing. Not  
es, but it  
box with  
s they do  
ome; and  
much in-  
Some of  
exercises,

hind him  
ought pro-  
re his de-  
mbléd the  
his intend-  
ve a bull  
and two  
. He in-  
th animals  
ir island;  
degree of  
therefore,  
they had  
t they and  
they had  
n. Omai  
ses, as far  
ould per-  
give old  
that chief  
e share of  
f the na-

tives were dissatisfied with the allotment of our animals; for, the next morning, two of our turkey-cocks and one kid were missing. Our commodore, being determined to get them restored, seized on three canoes that were alongside the ships; then went on shore, and having found his majesty, his brother, Feenou, and some other chiefs, in our house, he immediately appointed a guard over them, and intimated to them, that they must continue under restraint till not only the turkeys and the kid, but the other things of which we had been plundered at various times were restored to us. They assured him that the things in question should all be returned; and then sat down to drink *kava* with an appearance of unconcern. Soon afterwards, an axe and an iron wedge, were brought to us. Some armed natives, in the mean time, began to assemble behind the house; but they dispersed when a part of our guard marched against them; and the chiefs, at the instigation of the commodore, gave orders that no more should appear. When he invited them to dine with him on board, they readily consented. Some of them having afterwards objected to Poulaho's going, he rose up immediately, and declared that he would be the first man. Accordingly, the chiefs went on board with captain Cook, and remained in the ship till near four o'clock. He then conducted them ashore; and, not long after, the kid and one of the turkeys were restored to him. On their promising that the other turkey should be brought back the next morning, he released both them and the canoes.

Captain Cook now walked out with Omai, with a view of observing how the natives in our neigh-



bourhood fared ; for this was the usual time of their meals. He found that they were in general ill supplied ; a circumstance not to be wondered at, since most of the yams, and other provisions that they brought with them, were disposed of to us ; and they were unwilling to return to their own habitations while they could procure any sustenance near our post. That particular part of the island where our station was, being uncultivated, there were none of the natives who had a fixed residence within half a mile of us. Those therefore who were at our post were obliged to live under trees and bushes, or in temporary sheds ; and the cocoa-trees were stripped of their branches for the purpose of erecting huts for the chiefs.

Omai and the captain, in the course of their walk, found six or seven women at supper together, two of whom were fed by the others. On their asking the reason of this circumstance, the women replied *taboo mattee*. Upon further inquiry it appeared, that one of them, about two months before, had washed the corpse of a chief, on which account she was not allowed to handle any food for five months ; and that the other had performed the same office to the dead body of a person of inferior rank, and was therefore under a similar restriction, though not for so long a space.

On Saturday the 21st, early in the morning, Poulaho came on board to invite captain Cook to an *haiwa* or entertainment, which he designed to give the same day. He had already had his head besmeared with red pigment, in order to communicate a red colour to his hair, which was naturally of a dark brown. The captain, after breakfast, at-

tended  
very b  
right  
of near  
filled w  
and fa  
at the  
posts f  
yams,  
had re  
tinued  
thirty  
op of  
the to  
another  
dispat  
reman  
accun  
bread  
turtle  
added  
a mat  
presen  
*mai*,  
very  
at M  
cond  
five v  
in th  
Near  
leave  
clubs  
other  
tivity

tended him to the shore, and found the islanders very busy in two places, fixing in a square and upright position, four very long posts, at the distance of near two feet from each other. They afterwards filled up with yams the space between the posts; and fastened sticks across, from one post to another, at the distance of every four feet, to prevent the posts from separating, by the weight of the inclosed yams, and also to ascend by. As soon as the yams had reached the summit of the first posts, they continued to fasten others to them, till each pile was thirty feet or more in height. They placed on the top of one of the piles two backed hogs; and, on the top of the other a living one; and they tied another by the legs half-way up. The facility and dispatch with which these two piles were raised, was remarkable. After they had completed them, they accumulated some other heaps of yams, and also of bread-fruit, on each side of the area; to which a turtle, and a great quantity of excellent fish were added. The whole of this, with some red feathers, a mat, and a piece of cloth, composed the king's present to captain Cook. About one o'clock the *mai*, or dances, were begun. The first of these very nearly resembled the first that was performed at Mareewagee's entertainment. The second was conducted by young Toobou; and in this four or five women were introduced, who equalled the men in the exactness and regularity of their motions. Near the end, the performers divided, in order to leave room for two champions, who exercised their clubs. In the third dance, which was the last, two other men, with clubs, exhibited their skill and activity. The dances were succeeded by boxing and

wrestling ; and one man entered the lists with a kind of heavy club, made from the stem of a cocoa-leaf, but could meet with no opponent to engage him in so rough a diversion. Towards the evening the *bomai*, or night-dances, began, in which the king himself, apparelled in English manufacture, was a performer : but neither these, nor the dances in the day-time, were so capital as those of Feenou or Marewagee.

The commodore, in order to be present the whole time, dined on shore. Poulaho sat down with him, but neither ate nor drank, which was owing to the presence of a female, who had been admitted, at his request, to the dining party, and who, as we were informed in the sequel, was of superior rank to himself. This lady had no sooner dined, than she walked up to Poulaho, who applied his hands to her feet ; after which she retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into a glass of wine, and then all her attendants paid him obeisance. At his desire some of our fireworks were played off in the evening ; but being damaged, they did not answer the expectations of the spectators.

No more entertainments being expected on either side, and the curiosity of the populace being in a great degree satisfied ; most of them deserted us the day after Poulaho's *harua*. Still, however, we had thieves among us, and had continual instances of their depredations.

Some of the officers of both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, returned the 22d of June in the evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken their muskets and necessary ammunition with them,

beside  
modit  
dexter  
short  
likely  
plund  
witho  
the ki  
not k  
this a  
lay hi  
ing,  
not a  
The  
prima  
in it.  
to br  
in hi  
meas  
retur  
clara  
was  
us w  
U  
serve  
peop  
try,  
they  
prev  
been  
and  
in o  
the  
the

besides several small articles of the favourite commodities; the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them in the course of their short journey. Inconvenient consequences were likely to have attended this affair; for, when our plundered travellers returned, they employed Omai, without consulting captain Cook, to complain to the king of the treatment they had received. He, not knowing how the captain would proceed in this affair, and apprehending that he might again lay him under restraint, set off early the next morning, and Feenou followed his example; so that not a chief of authority now remained near us. The captain was offended at this business, and reprimanded Omai for having presumed to interfere in it. This reprimand induced him to endeavour to bring back his friend Feenou, and he succeeded in his negotiation, by assuring him that no violent measures would be pursued to oblige the natives to return what they had stolen. Trusting to this declaration, Feenou came back in the evening, and was favourably received. Poulaho also favoured us with his company next day.

Upon this occasion the two chiefs very justly observed to captain Cook, that whenever any of his people wanted to take an excursion into the country, they ought to be made acquainted with it, that they might order proper people to attend them, to prevent such outrages. And, had this precaution been taken, it is not to be doubted but that a man and his property would have been as safe here as in other parts of the more civilized world. Though the captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occasion, the whole of

them were returned, through the interposition of Frenou, except one musket, and a few other insignificant articles. By this time also we recovered the tools and other matters that had been stolen from our workmen.

On Wednesday the 25th of June, two boats, which captain Cook had sent in search of a commodious channel to sea, returned. The commanders of them reported, that the channel to the north, through which we came in, was imminently dangerous, being full of coral rocks; that there was a good channel to the eastward, though contracted, in one place, by the small islands; consequently a westerly wind would be necessary to get through it. We had now recruited our ships, and repaired our sails, and had little more to expect of the produce of the island; but, as an eclipse of the sun was to happen on the 5th of July, the captain determined to stay till that time, to have a chance of observing it.

Having now some leisure before us, captain Cook, and a party of us, accompanied by Poulaho, set out the next morning, in a boat, for Mooa, a kind of village, where he and the other men of consequence usually reside. Rowing up the inlet, we saw fourteen canoes fishing in company; in one of which was Poulaho's son. They had then taken some fine mullets, about a dozen of which they put into our boat. They showed us their whole method of fishing, which appeared to be an effectual one.

Taking leave of the prince and his fishing party, we were rowed to the bottom of the bay, and landed where we had done before when we went to see

Mar  
were  
thou  
place  
ratio  
hous  
in a  
was  
were  
getti  
the  
whet  
place  
belon  
hous  
one  
large  
whic  
twen  
hous  
of th  
were  
close  
the  
bust  
inqu  
not  
form  
chie  
as th  
men  
app  
V  
buri



Mareewagee. As soon as we got on shore, we were conducted to one of Poulaho's houses; which, though tolerably large, seemed to be his private place of residence, and was situate within a plantation. The king seated himself at one end of the house, and those who came to visit him sat down in a semi-circle at the other end. A bowl of *kava* was immediately prepared for us, and directions were given to bake some yams. While these were getting ready, some of us, together with a few of the king's attendants, and Omai as our interpreter, went to take a view of a *fiatooka*, or burying-place, at a small distance from the habitation. It belonged to the king, and consisted of three largish houses, situate on a rising ground, with a small one not far off, all ranged longitudinally. The largest of the three first was the middle house, which was placed in a square, twenty-four paces by twenty-eight, raised about three feet. The other houses were placed on little mounts. On the floors of these houses, as also on the tops of the mounts, were fine loose pebbles; and the whole was enclosed by large flat stones of coral rock. One of the houses was open on one side, and two wooden busts of men, rudely carved, were within it. We inquired of the natives who followed us (but durst not enter here) what these images were; who informed us, that they were memorials of some chiefs who had been buried there, and not meant as the representatives of any deity. Such monuments, it is presumed, are seldom raised; for these appeared to have been erected many ages.

We were informed that dead bodies had been buried in each of these houses, but no marks of

them were to be distinguished. The carved head of an Otaheite canoe, which had been driven ashore on their coast, was deposited in one of them. On the rising ground was a grass-plot, on which different large trees were planted; among which were several of those called etoa. They greatly resemble the cypress, and had a very solemn effect. A row of low palms was also planted near one of the houses.

After refreshing ourselves with some provisions, which we had brought from our ships, we took a pretty large circuit into the country, attended by one of the king's ministers, who would not suffer any of the rabble to follow us, and obliged those whom we met upon our progress to sit down while we were passing; a mark of respect due only to their sovereigns. The greatest part of the country was cultivated, and most of their plantations fenced round. Some parts, indeed, lay fallow, and others in a state of nature; the latter afforded large quantities of timber.

We found many public and well-beaten paths, leading to different parts of the island. Traveling here was, indeed, very commodious, the roads being excellent, and the country level. We were conducted to several pools and springs of water, but they were, in general, either brackish or stinking.

In the dusk of the evening we returned from our walk, and found our supper in readiness. It consisted of some fish and yams, and a baked hog, in which all the culinary arts of the island had been displayed. There being nothing to amuse us after supper, we lay down to sleep, according to the custom of the country, on mats spread upon the

floor, and had a covering of cloth. The king, who became happy with wine and brandy which we had brought, also slept in the house, as did several others of the natives. Before day-break they all rose, and entered into conversation by moon-light. As soon as it was day, they dispersed different ways, but it was not long before they all returned, accompanied by several of their countrymen.

While they were preparing a bowl of *kava*, captain Cook went to pay a visit to Toobou, captain Furneaux's friend, who had a house not far distant, which for size and neatness was hardly exceeded in the place. Here also we found a company preparing a morning draught. The chief made a present to the captain of a living hog, and one that was baked; also a quantity of yams, and a large piece of cloth. Returning to the king, we found him and his attendants drinking the second bowl of *kava*. That business being performed, he informed Omai that he was going to perform a mourning ceremony, called *tooge*, in memory of a son who had been sometime dead, and desired us to accompany him. Naturally expecting to see somewhat new or curious, we readily complied with the request.

The king stepped out of the house, attended by two old women, and put on a new cloathing, over which was placed an old ragged mat, which might probably have served his grandfather upon a similar solemn occasion. His attendants were habited in the same manner, excepting that, in point of antiquity, none of their mats could vie with that of their master. Thus equipped, we marched off, preceded by eight or ten persons in the same uniform, each of them having likewise a green bough about

his neck. Poulaho, who held his bough in his hand till he approached the place of rendezvous, then also put it about his neck. We now entered a small inclosure, wherein was a neat house, and a man sitting before it. As the company entered, they took the branches from their necks, and threw them away. The king seated himself, and the others sat before him in the usual manner. By the arrival of other persons the circle increased to upwards of an hundred, principally old men, all dressed in the manner above described. The company being assembled, a large root of *kava* was produced by one of the king's servants, and a capacious bowl that would contain five or six gallons. Many persons now began to chew the root, and the bowl was filled with liquor up to the brim. Others were employed in making drinking-cups of plantain leaves. The first cup that was filled, being presented to the king, he ordered it to be given to another person; the second was also presented to him, and he drank it; the third was offered to captain Cook. Afterwards a cup was given to several others, till the liquor was exhausted; and, though not half the company partook of it, no one appeared in the least dissatisfied. Each cup, as it was emptied, was thrown upon the ground, whence it was taken up, and carried to be filled again. All this time the chief, and his whole circle, sat with a great deal of gravity, hardly speaking a syllable to each other.

All this while we were in expectation of seeing the mourning ceremony begin; when, to our great surprise, as soon as the *kava* was drank out, they

all rose  
up he

We  
other  
The  
a valu  
careful  
jury;  
It doe  
though  
has lar

Onl  
Island  
vants,  
off, an  
wards  
are to  
togeth  
adding  
a prop  
the h  
produc

Ab  
usuall  
effect  
but, o  
occasi

The  
Moa  
Rowin  
return  
appro  
shell.  
search



all rose up, and dispersed; and Poulaho informed us he was now ready to attend us to the ships.

We had sometimes seen the drinking of *kava* at other islands, but nowhere so frequent as here. The *kava* is a species of pepper, which they esteem a valuable article, and cultivate for this purpose, carefully defending the young plants from any injury; and it is usually planted about their houses. It does not often exceed the height of a man, though they are sometimes seen much higher. It has large heart-shaped leaves, and jointed stalks.

Only the root of the *kava* is used at the Friendly Islands: after being dug up, it is given to the servants, who, breaking it in pieces, scrape the dirt off, and each chews his portion, which he afterwards spits into a piece of plantain leaf. Those who are to prepare the liquor, collect these mouthfuls together, and deposit them in a large wooden bowl, adding a sufficient quantity of water to make it of a proper strength. It is then well mixed up with the hands, and wrung hard, in order to make it productive of as much liquid as possible.

About a quarter of a pint of this beverage is usually put into each cup. It has no perceptible effect upon these people, who use it so frequently; but, on some of ours, it operated like our spirits, occasioning intoxication, or rather stupefaction.

The mourning ceremony being over, we left Mooa, and set out on our return to the ships. Rowing down the inlet, we met with two canoes returning from fishing. Poulaho ordered them to approach him, and took from them every fish and shell. He afterwards stopped two other canoes, searched them, and found nothing. He gave us



some of the fish, and the rest were sold by his servants on board the ship. Proceeding down the inlet, we overtook a large sailing canoe, when every person on board sat down till we had passed; even the man who steered, though he could not possibly manage the helm but in a standing posture.

Having been informed by Poulaho and others that there was some good water at Onevy, a small island about a league off the mouth of the inlet, we landed there, in order to taste it, and found it to be extremely brackish. This island is quite in a natural state, and only frequented as a fishing-place; having nearly the same productions as Palmerston's Island.

When we returned to the ship, captain Cook was informed that every thing had been quiet during his absence; not a single theft having been committed; of which Feenou and Futafaihe, the king's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen in the captain's absence, boasted not a little. This evinces what power the chiefs have when they are inclined to exert it; which is not often to be expected; for whatever was stolen from us was generally conveyed to them.

The next day six or eight of the natives assaulted some of our people who were sawing planks; in consequence of which they were fired on by the sentry; one of them was supposed to be wounded, and three were taken. The latter were confined till night, when they were punished, and set at liberty. After this, their behaviour was very decent and circumspect, occasioned, as we imagined, by the man being wounded: for, till

this t  
arms.  
mista  
And  
try,  
mark  
ball.

N  
for t  
val v  
abov  
Mr  
tors  
broth  
ed, a  
repea  
then  
piece  
by t  
an o  
dug  
with  
are  
then  
of t  
the  
to p  
of t  
the,  
the  
cart  
over  
bak

this time, they had only *heard* of the effect of fire-arms, but now they had *felt* it. We were not mistaken in our conjecture, for Mr King, and Mr Anderson, in an excursion they took into the country, met with the very man, and found indubitable marks of his having been wounded with a musket-ball.

Nothing worthy of notice happened at the ships for two days ; we shall therefore fill up that interval with an account of Mr Anderson's excursion, abovementioned. On Monday the 30th of June, Mr King, and he, accompanied Futafaihe as visitors to his house, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho at Moqa. Soon after they arrived, a largish hog was killed, which was effected by repeated strokes upon the head. The hair was then curiously scraped off, with the sharp edge of pieces of split bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the same simple instrument. Previous to this an oven had been prepared, which is a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which is covered with stones about the size of a man's fist, which are made red hot by kindling a fire over them ; then they wrapt up some of these stones in leaves of the bread-fruit tree, with which they filled the hog's belly ; stuffing in a quantity of leaves to prevent their falling out, and thrusting a plug of the same kind in the anus. This being done, the carcase was placed upon some sticks laid across the stones, and covered with plantain leaves. The earth was afterwards dug up all round ; and the oven being thus effectually closed, the operation of baking required no further aid.

They afterwards amused themselves by walking

about the country, but saw nothing remarkable, except a fiatooka of about thirty feet high. At a small distance there was a number of etoa-trees, on which were vast quantities of *Ternate* bats, making a most horrible noise. Not having their muskets at that time, they could not kill any of them, but some, taken at Annamooka, measured almost a yard when the wings were extended.

On their return to Futafaihe's house, the baked hog was produced, accompanied with some cocoa-nuts, and several baskets of baked yams. The person who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a very masterly manner with a knife made of split bamboo. Though the weight of it was at least fifty pounds, the whole was placed before them; when they took a small part, and desired the rest might be partaken of by the people sitting round. Futafaihe could hardly be prevailed upon to eat a morsel.

Dinner being ended, they went with him and his attendants towards the spot where Poulaho's mourning ceremony was performed. They saw nothing but a kind of continuation of the same solemn rites, by way of condolence. Upon inquiring upon whose account it was now transacted, they were informed that it was in memory of a chief who had long since died at Vavaoo; that they had practised it ever since, and should continue to do so for a considerable length of time to come.

They were entertained, in the evening, with a pig for supper, dressed like the hog, and, like that, accompanied with yams and cocoa-nuts. When the supper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to sleep in; but they were dis-

turbe  
luxun  
thiem  
they  
perfo  
by str  
fell  
it the  
they  
the b  
of hi  
ing t  
reliev  
Such  
be su  
it op  
habit  
T  
and  
bay.  
be v  
Mod  
faihe  
auth  
one  
and  
beer  
pert  
T  
stat  
erci  
pear  
war  
the

turbed in their repose, by a singular instance of luxury, in which their men of consequence indulge themselves; that of being thumped or beat while they are asleep. Two women, who sat by Futafaihe, performed this operation, which they call *tooge tooge*, by striking his body and legs with both fists till he fell asleep, and, with some intervals, continued it the whole night. The person being fast asleep, they abate a little of the strength and briskness of the beating; but, if they observe any appearance of his awakening, they resume it. In the morning they were informed that Futafaihe's women relieved each other, and went alternately to sleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be supposed to be destructive of all rest; but here, it operates like an opiate, and strongly shows what habit may effect.

They set out with Futafaihe the next morning, and walked to the point, down the east-side of the bay. The country all along this side appeared to be well cultivated, but not so much inclosed as at Mooa. They found, that in travelling Futafaihe exercised a power, which showed the great authority the principal men are invested with. To one place he sent for fish, to another for yams; and his orders were as readily obeyed as if he had been absolutely master of all the people's property.

They crossed the bay, in the evening, to their station, in a canoe procured by Futafaihe, by exercising his authority in calling to the first that appeared; he had also a large hog at this place, and wanted them to accept of a bundle of cloth; but, the boat being small, they objected, and he ex-



dered it to be taken to them the next day. Thus ends Mr Anderson's account of his excursion.

Captain Cook had prolonged his stay at this island on account of the approaching eclipse; but, on looking at the micrometer, (on the 2d of July) he found some accident had happened to it, and that it was rendered useless till repaired, which could not be done before the time it was intended to be used. We therefore got on board, this day, all the cattle and other animals, except those that were destined to remain. The captain designed to have left a turkey-cock and hen, but two hens being destroyed by accident, and wishing to carry the breed to Otabeite, he reserved the only remaining pair for that purpose.

We took up our anchor the next day, and moved the ships behind Pangimodoo, to be ready for the first favourable wind to take us through the narrows. The king, who was of our company, one day, at dinner, I observed took particular notice of the plates. This occasioned me to make him an offer of one, either of pewter, or of earthen ware. He chose the first; and then began to tell us the several uses to which he intended to apply it. Two of them are so extraordinary, that I cannot omit mentioning them. He said, that whenever he should have occasion to visit any of the other islands, he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as a sort of representative in his absence, that the people might pay it the same obeisance they do to himself in person. He was asked what had been usually employed for this purpose, before he got this plate; and we had the satisfaction of learning from him, that this singular ho-

nour  
which  
nary  
of in  
said,  
could  
bled  
hands  
clean  
one a  
ner th  
obeis  
imme  
by the  
to tou  
was t  
of Ju  
cloud  
o'clock  
about  
befor  
appe  
eclip  
der c  
end.  
ment  
ed b  
T  
stru  
Non  
thre  
orde  
was  
they



Thurs  
n.  
at this  
; but,  
(July)  
it, and  
which  
attended  
his day,  
ose that  
igned to  
ent be-  
o carry  
nly re-  
d mov-  
ady for  
the nar-  
ny, one  
r notice  
ake him  
earthen  
to tell  
apply it.  
cannot  
he never  
e other  
him at  
his ab-  
ne obei-  
s asked  
urpose,  
atisfac-  
lar ho-

nour had been conferred on a wooden bowl in which he washed his hands. The other extraordinary use to which he meant to apply it in the room of his wooden bowl, was to discover a thief. He said, that when any thing was stolen, and the thief could not be found out, the people were all assembled together before him, when he washes his hands in water in this vessel; after which it was cleaned, and then the whole multitude advanced, one after another, and touched it in the same manner that they touch his foot, when they pay him obeisance. If the guilty person touched it, he died immediately upon the spot: not by violence, but by the hand of Providence; and if any one refused to touch it, his refusal was a clear proof that he was the man. In the morning of Saturday the 5th of July, the day of the eclipse, the weather was cloudy, with some showers of rain. About nine o'clock the sun broke out at small intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obscured just before the beginning of the eclipse. The sun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the eclipse; but was seen no more during the remainder of the day, so that we could not observe the end. This disappointment was the less to be lamented, as the longitude was sufficiently determined by lunar observations.

The eclipse being over, we packed up the instruments, and every thing was conveyed on board. None of the natives having taken any care of the three sheep allotted to Mareewagee, the commodore ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive, that if they had been left there they would probably be destroyed by dogs. These

animals did not exist upon the island in 1773, when the commodore first visited it; but there is now plenty of them, partly from the breed left by him, and partly from some imported from an island, called *Feejee*. At present, however, the dogs have not got into any of the Friendly Islands, except Tongataboo.

Mr. Anderson has given us the following description of this island. Amsterdam, Tongataboo, or Tonga (as it is sometimes called by the natives) is about twenty leagues in circumference, rather oblong, though broadest at the east end, and its greatest length is from east to west. The south shore is straight, consisting of coral rocks of about eight or ten feet high, terminating perpendicularly, except in some few places where there are sandy beaches. The west end is about five or six miles broad, and has a shore like that of the south side; but the north side is environed with shoals and islands; and the east side is, most probably, like the south.

This island may with propriety be called a low one; the only eminent part to be observed from a ship, is the southeast point, though many gentle rising and declining grounds are perceivable by those who are on shore. Though the general appearance of the country does not exhibit that beautiful kind of landscape, produced by a variety of hills and valleys, rivulets, and lawns, yet it conveys an idea of the most exuberant fertility. The surface, at a distance, seems entirely clothed with trees of various sizes: but the tall cocoa-palms raise their tufted heads high above the rest, and are a noble ornament to any country that produces

them.  
is the  
most c  
tivated  
sorts o

The  
toward  
far wi  
be occ  
now t  
from s  
wind,  
even  
blows  
panied

The  
fected  
once;  
another  
spring

A  
island  
on th  
any o  
about  
which  
have,  
the n  
coral  
parts,  
ces, i  
ingly

Th  
island

them. The boogoo, which is a species of the fig, is the largest sized tree upon the island; and the most common bushes and small trees, on the uncultivated spots, are the pandanus, the faitanoo, several sorts of hibiscus, and a few others.

The climate of Tongataboo, from the situation towards the tropic, is more variable than in countries far within that line; though that might, perhaps, be occasioned by the season of the year, which was now the winter solstice. The winds are generally from some point between the south and east. The wind, indeed, sometimes veers to the northeast, or even northwest, but never continues long, nor blows strong from thence, though often accompanied with heavy rain, and close sultry weather.

The vegetable productions are never so much affected, respecting the foliage, as to shed it all at once; but every leaf, as it falls, is succeeded by another, which causes the appearance of universal spring.

A coral rock appears to be the basis of the island, that being the only sort that presents itself on the shore. There was not the appearance of any other stone, except some small blue pebbles about the *fiatookas*, and the smooth black stone, of which the natives make their hatchets; and these have, perhaps, been brought from other islands in the neighbourhood. Though in many places the coral projects above the surface, the soil is, in most parts, of a considerable depth. In cultivated places, it is generally of a loose black colour, seemingly produced by the rotten vegetables.

The principal of the cultivated fruits in this island are plantains, of which they have fifteen

varieties; the jambu, and the eeevee; the latter being a kind of plum; and vast quantities of shaddocks, as often found in a natural state as planted.

Of yams there are two sorts; one black, and so large as to weigh from twenty to thirty pounds; the other white and long, seldom exceeding a pound in weight. There is a large root, called kappe; another like our white potatoes, called mawhaha; the talo, and the jeejee.

They have vast numbers of cocoa-nut trees, and three other sorts of palms. One is called becoo, growing almost as high as the cocoa-tree, and having very large leaves, plaited like a fan. The other is a kind of cabbage tree, much resembling the cocoa, but rather thicker. A third sort is called ongo-ongo; it seldom grows higher than five or six feet. Plenty of excellent sugar-cane is cultivated here; also gourds, bamboo, turmeric, and a species of fig, called matte; but the catalogue of uncultivated plants is too large to be enumerated.

There are no quadrupeds in this island, but hogs, dogs, and a few rats. Fowls of a large breed are domesticated here.

Among the birds are parrots, and parroquets, cuckoos, king-fishers, and a bird of the thrush kind, of a dull green colour, which is the only singing bird we could find here; but it compensates in a great degree for the want of others, by the force and melody of its voice.

Among the other land birds, are rails about the size of a pigeon, of a variegated grey colour; a black sort with reddish eyes; large violet coots.

with  
small  
Of  
ka;  
dies:  
lour;  
plover  
Am  
tribe,  
about  
white  
green  
two st  
and b  
ther w  
differe

The  
less th  
plenty  
soles,  
those a  
and so

Th  
the re  
oyster  
but n  
panam  
severa  
crabs

Th  
suffici  
the m  
event  
a necc



with red bald crowns ; two sorts of fly-catchers ; a small swallow ; and three sorts of pigeons.

Of water-fowl, are the ducks seen at Annamooka ; tropic birds ; blue and white herons ; noddies : white terns ; a new species of a leaden colour ; a small bluish curlew : and a large spotted plover.

Among the animals of the reptile, or insect tribe, are sea-snakes, (though often seen on shore) about three feet long, with alternate black and white circles ; some scorpions, and centipedes : also green guanoes, about eighteen inches long, and two smaller sorts. Here are some beautiful moths and butterflies, and some very large spiders ; together with others, making, in the whole, about fifty different sorts of insects.

Though the sea abounds with fish, the variety is less than might be imagined : those in the greatest plenty are mullets, silver-fish, old wives, parrot-fish, soles, leather-jackets, albicores, bonnetos, eels like those about Palmerston's Island, rays, a sort of pike, and some devil-fish.

There are an endless variety of shell fish about the reefs and shoals ; among which are the hammer oyster ; a large indented oyster, and many others ; but none of the common sort ; a gigantic cockle ; panamas ; cones ; pearl-shell oysters, &c. Also several sorts of sea-eggs ; many curious star-fish ; crabs ; cray-fish, &c. and several sorts of sponge.

Though we were now ready to sail, we had not sufficient day-light to turn through the narrows ; the morning flood falling out too early, and the evening flood too late. We were therefore under a necessity of waiting two or three days, unless we



should be fortunate enough to have a leading wind.

This delay gave us an opportunity to be present at a public solemnity, to which the king had invited us, and which was to be performed on the 8th. He and all the people of consequence repaired to Mooa on the 7th, where the solemnity was to be exhibited. Several of us followed them the next morning. Poulaho had informed us, that his son was now to be initiated into certain privileges; one of which was, that of eating with his father; an honour he had not hitherto enjoyed.

About eight o'clock in the morning we arrived at Mooa, where we found the king, with a number of attendants sitting before him, within a small dirty inclosure. They were, as usual, busied in preparing a bowl of *tava*. As this was not liquor for us, we went to pay a visit to some of our friends, and to observe what preparations were making for the ceremony, which was soon expected to begin.

About ten o'clock the people assembled in a large area before the *malae*, or great house. At the end of a road, opening into this area, stood several men with spears and clubs, incessantly reciting short sentences, in mournful accents, which conveyed an idea of distress. This was continued about an hour; during which time, many people came down the road, each having a yam tied to the middle of a pole, which they laid down before those who continued repeating the sentences. At length the king and prince arrived, and seated themselves upon the area; and we were requested to sit down by them, to take off our hats, and to

unt  
ent  
who  
wa  
two  
rap  
had  
seve  
bou  
pro  
a p  
chie  
muc  
us t  
fore  
to h  
hou  
mile  
depo  
dles  
lear  
or  
Pou  
wall  
side  
part  
sent  
capt  
sum  
very  
thei  
wou

untie our hair. The bearers of the yams having all entered, each pole was taken up between two men, who carried it over their shoulders. They afterwards formed themselves into companies, of ten or twelve each, and marched across the place with a rapid pace, each company headed by a man who had a club or spear, and defended on the right, by several others, armed with different weapons. About two hundred and fifty persons walked in the procession, which was closed by a man carrying on a perch a living pigeon.

Omai was desired by captain Cook to ask the chief where the yams were to be carried with so much solemnity; but he seemed unwilling to give us the information we required; some of us, therefore, followed the procession, seemingly contrary to his inclination.

They stopped before a *morai* or *fiatooka* of one house standing upon a mount, about a quarter of a mile from where they first assembled. Here they deposited the yams, and gathered them into bundles; but for what purpose we could not possibly learn. Our presence seeming to give them offence or uneasiness, we quitted them, and returned to Poulaho, who advised us to amuse ourselves by walking about, as nothing would be done for a considerable time. The fear of losing the sight of any part of the ceremony prevented our being long absent. When we returned to the king, he desired captain Cook to order the boat's crew not to presume to stir from the boat, for every thing would, very soon, be *taboo*; and if any of our people, or of their own, should be seen walking about, they would certainly be knocked down with clubs; nay

*mateed* ; that is killed. He also informed us that we could not be present at the ceremony ; but that we should be placed in such a situation as to be able to see every thing that passed. Our dress was particularly objected to, and we were told, that, to qualify us to be present, we must be naked as low as the breast, and our hats taken off, and our hair untied. Omai readily agreed to conform to these requisites, and immediately began to strip ; but other objections were then started, and he was excluded equally with ourselves.

Not relishing this restriction, the captain stole out, to see what might now be going forward. Very few people, however, were to be seen, except those who were dressed to attend the ceremony ; some having in their hands small poles, about four feet in length, to the under part of which were fastened two or three other small sticks, about six inches long. These men were going towards the *morai*. Captain Cook took the same road, and was frequently stopped by them, all crying out *taboo*. However he ventured to go forward till he came in sight of the *morai*, and of the people sitting before it. He was now strongly urged to go back, and, not knowing what might be the consequence of a refusal, he complied. He had observed, that those who carried the poles, passed the *morai* ; and guessing, from this circumstance, that something was transacting beyond it, he had some thoughts of advancing, by making a round for this purpose ; but he was so narrowly observed by three men, that he had no opportunity of putting his design in execution. In order to shake off these fellows, he returned to the *malae*, where he had parted from

the king, and afterwards made an elopement a second time; but he instantly met with the same three men, who had doubtless received instructions to watch him. He paid no attention to them, till he came within sight of the king's principal *fiatooka* or *morai*; before which a great number of people were sitting, being those whom he had just before seen pass by the other *morai*, from which this was but a little distant. Seeing that he could observe the proceedings of this company from the king's plantation, he repaired thither, accompanied by several of his people,

The number of persons at the *fiatooka* continued increasing for some time; and at length, they quit-  
ted their sitting posture, and marched off in procession. They walked in pairs, every pair carrying between them one of the small poles on their shoulders. We were informed, that the small pieces of sticks fastened to the poles were yams; it is therefore probable that they were meant to represent this root emblematically. The hindmost man of each couple placed one of his hands to the middle of the pole, as if it were not strong enough to carry the weight that hung to it, and under which they all seemed to bend, as they proceeded. This procession consisted of one hundred and eight pairs, and principally men of rank. Having seen them all pass, we repaired to Poulaho's house, and saw him going out. We were not permitted to follow him; but were immediately conducted to the place allotted to us, behind a fence adjoining to the area of the *fiatooka* where the yams had been deposited in the morning.



Arriving at our station, we saw two or three hundred people sitting on the grass near the end of the road opening into the area of the *morai*; and others were continually joining them. At length, arrived a few men, each carrying some small poles and branches, or leaves of the cocoa-nut tree. As soon as they appeared, an old man seated himself in the road, and pronounced a long oration in a serious majestic tone. He then retired, and the others advancing to the middle of the area, began to erect a small shed or hut; employing, for that purpose, the materials already mentioned. Their work being finished, they all squatted down for a moment before it, then rose up, and joined the rest of the company. Poulaho's son arrived soon after, preceded by four or five men. After them appeared about twelve or fourteen women of the first rank, advancing slowly in pairs, each pair carrying between them a narrow piece of white cloth, about two or three yards in length. They approached the prince, squatted down before him, and wrapped some of the pieces of the cloth round his body; they then rose up, and retired in the same order, to some distance on his left, where they seated themselves. Poulaho now made his appearance, preceded by four men, walking two and two abreast, and sat down on his son's left hand, at a small distance from him. The young prince then quitted his first position, and seated himself under the shed, with his attendants; many others placed themselves on the grass before this royal canopy. The prince sat facing the people, with his back to the *morai*. Three companies of about ten or a dozen men in each, started up from among the crowd, soon after each other, and

run  
few  
ner.  
two  
hand  
sittin  
as th  
ner,  
sat.  
mon  
T  
other  
tered  
shed.  
depo  
and  
and  
with  
along  
band  
men,  
cing  
tone.  
A  
after  
bega  
diffe  
been  
the p  
make  
dants  
Sa  
of ou  
Cook



or three  
the end  
*morai*; and  
t length,  
all poles  
ree. As  
himself  
n in a se-  
he others  
to erect  
purpose,  
work be-  
moment  
st of the  
ter, pre-  
appeared  
rst rank,  
rying be-  
bout two  
e prince,  
me of the  
then rose  
distance  
Poulaho  
our men,  
vn on his  
m. The  
ion, and  
endants;  
ss before  
the peo-  
ompanies  
arted up  
her, and

running hastily to the opposite side, sat down for a few seconds; and then returned, in the same manner, to their former stations. To them succeeded two men, each having a small green branch in his hand, who rose and advanced towards the prince, sitting down, for a few seconds, three different times as they approached; and retired in the same manner, inclining their branches to each other as they sat. Afterwards two other repeated the same ceremony.

The grand procession, which marched from the other *morai*, now began to come in. As they entered the area, they proceeded to the right of the shed, and having prostrated themselves on the grass, deposited their pretended heavy burthens, (the poles) and faced round to the prince. They then rose up, and retired in the same order, closing their hands with the most serious aspect, and seated themselves along the front of the area. While this numerous band were entering and depositing their poles, three men, who sat with the prince, continued pronouncing separate sentences, in a mournful melancholy tone.

A profound silence then ensued for a short time, after which a man who sat in the front of the area, began a kind of oration, during which, at several different times, he broke one of the poles which had been brought in. Having concluded his oration, the people, sitting before the shed, separated, to make a lane, through which the prince and his attendants passed, and the assembly closed.

Satisfied with what they had already seen, some of our party now returned to the ships; but captain Cook, and some more of the officers, remained at

Moon, to see the conclusion of the solemnity, which was not to be till the day following. The small poles, which had been brought by those who walked in procession, being left on the ground, after the crowd had dispersed, the commodore examined them, and found that, to the middle of each, two or three small sticks were tied, as has been related. They were probably intended as only artificial representations of small yams.

Our supper, consisting of fish and yams, was got ready about seven o'clock. The king supped with us, and drank so freely of brandy and water, that he retired to bed with a sufficient dose. We continued the whole night in the same house with him and his attendants.

All, except Poulaho himself, rose at day-break; soon after which, a woman, one of those who generally attended upon the chief, came in, and, sitting down by him, immediately began the same operation which had been practised upon Futafaihe, tapping or beating gently with her clenched fists on his thighs. This, instead of adding to his repose, had the contrary effect, and he awoke.

Captain Cook and Omai now paid a visit to the prince, who had parted from us early the preceding evening; for he did not lodge with the king, but in apartments of his own, at some distance from his father's house. We found him with a circle of boys, about his own age, sitting before him, and an old man and woman. There were others of of both sexes employed about their necessary affairs, who probably belonged to his household.

We then returned to the king, who had a crowded levee before him, consisting principally of old

men. While a bowl of *kava* was preparing, a baked hog and yams, smoking hot, were introduced; the greatest part of which fell to our share, for these people, especially the *kava* drinkers, eat very little in a morning.

We afterwards walked out, and visited several other chiefs; all of whom were taking their morning draught, or they had already taken it. Returning to the king, we found him asleep in a retired hut, with two women tapping or striking on his breach. About eleven o'clock he rose again, and ate some fish and yams, and again lay down to sleep. We now left him, and waited on the prince, with a present of cloth, beads, and other articles. There was a sufficient quantity of cloth to make him a complete suit, and he was immediately clad in his new habiliments. Proud of his dress, he first went to exhibit himself to his father, and then conducted captain Cook to his mother, with whom were about a dozen other women of a very respectable appearance. Here the prince changed his apparel, and made captain Cook a present of two pieces of the cloth which had been manufactured in the island.

It was now about noon, when, by appointment, the captain repaired to the palace to dinner; which was soon after served up, and consisted of two pigs and some yams. The drowsy monarch was roused to partake of what he had appointed for our entertainment. Two mullets, and some shell-fish, were introduced, as if intended for his own separate portion. But he added it to our fare, sat down with us, and made a very hearty meal.

Dinner being over, we were informed that the ceremony would soon begin, and were strictly en-

joined not to venture out. The commodore had resolved, however, to peep no longer from behind the curtain, but, if possible, to mix with the actors themselves. With this view he walked towards the *marai*, the scene of the solemnity. He was frequently desired to return, but he paid no regard to the admonitions he received, and was permitted to pass on. When arrived at the *marai*, he saw a number of men seated on the side of the area. A few were also sitting on the opposite side, and two men in the middle, with their faces turned to the the *marai*. When captain Cook had got into the midst of the first company, he was desired to sit down, which he accordingly did. Where he sat there were lying a number of small bundles, composed of cocoa-nut leaves, and fastened to sticks made into the form of hand barrows. All the information he could get concerning them was, that they were *taboo*. From time to time, one or another of the company turned to those who were coming to join us, and made a short speech, in which we remarked, that the word *areekee* (king) was generally mentioned. Something was said by one man that produced loud bursts of laughter from all around; others of the speakers, were also much applauded. The captain was frequently desired to leave the place; but at length, finding him determined to stay, they requested him to uncover his shoulders as theirs were. This he readily complied with, and then they no longer seemed uneasy at his presence.

The prince, the women, and the king, at length appeared, as they had done the preceding day. The prince being placed under the shed, two men, each

with  
a ver  
peopl  
comp  
area,  
the t  
short  
and  
princ  
of the  
ing c  
that  
could  
have  
Th  
cedin  
round  
ders  
with  
After  
of m  
such  
provi  
whic  
end o  
who  
shed,  
in his  
layin  
the  
manr  
ber o  
in th  
on th



dore had  
behind the  
he actors  
wards the  
was fre-  
regard to  
mitted to  
he saw a  
area. A  
and two  
ed to the  
into the  
red to sit  
re he sat  
bles, com-  
to sticks  
All the in-  
was, that  
ne or ano-  
who were  
speech, in  
lef (king)  
as said by  
ghter from  
also much  
desired to  
him deter-  
cover his  
y complied  
easy at his  
at length  
day. The  
men, each

with a piece of mat, came, repeating something in a very serious strain, and put them about him. The people now began their operations, and different companies ran backward and forward across the area, as in the former day. Presently afterwards, the two men, in the middle of the area, made a short speech, and then the whole company rose up, and placed themselves before the shed in which the prince and three or four men were seated. One of the company, who seemed very desirous of obliging captain Cook, procured him such a situation, that if he could have made use of his eyes, nothing could have escaped him. But it was necessary to have a demure countenance and downcast looks.

The procession soon after arrived, as on the preceding day; a pole, with a cocoa-nut leaf plaited round the middle of it, being carried on the shoulders of every two persons, these were deposited with the same ceremonies as on the day before. After this succeeded another procession, composed of men who brought baskets made of palm-leaves, such as are generally used by this people to carry provisions in. A third procession followed, in which a variety of small fish, each placed at the end of a forked stick, were brought. An old man, who sat on the prince's right hand, without the shed, received the baskets; each of which he kept in his hand, making a short speech or prayer; then laying that aside, he called for another, repeating the same kind of prayer; he proceeded in this manner till he had gone through the whole number of baskets. Two men, who, till this time, had in their hands green branches, and were seated on the left, received the fish one by one as they



were presented to them on the forked sticks. The first fish they laid down on their right, and the second on their left. The third being presented, a stoutish man, who was seated behind the other two, endeavoured to seize it, as did also the other two at the same time. Thus every fish was contended for ; but the man behind, on account of his disadvantageous situation, got only pieces ; for he never quitted his hold till the fish was torn out of his hand. What the others got were laid on the right and left. At last the person behind got possession of a whole fish, the other two not even touching it. Upon this, the word *mareeai*, (very good), was pronounced in a low voice throughout the whole crew . It appeared that he had now done all that was expected from him ; for he did not contend for the other fish. The persons who brought in these baskets and fish delivered them sitting ; and in the same manner, the poles carried in the first procession, had been placed upon the ground. At the close of the last procession there was some speaking or praying by different persons. Then, on a signal being given, we all rose up, ran several paces, and sat down, with our backs to the prince. The commodore was requested not to look behind him ; but he was not discouraged, by this injunction, from facing about. The prince had now turned his face to the *morai*, and from that moment he was admitted to the honour of eating with his father ; and a piece of roasted yam was presented to each of them for that purpose.

Soon after, we all turned about, forming a kind of semicircle before the prince, and leaving an

ed sticks.  
their right,  
bird being  
ted behind  
as did also  
every fish  
on account  
ly pieces;  
h was torn  
were laid  
son behind  
er two not  
rd *mareeai*,  
low voice  
red that he  
n him; for  
he persons  
delivered  
the poles  
laced upon  
procession  
y different  
en, we all  
, with our  
as request-  
not discou-  
out. The  
*morai*, and  
o the ho-  
a piece of  
em for that  
ing a kind  
leaving an

*Book's Fingers.*



TOUGAT 200.

an c  
van  
pol  
the  
W  
wal  
Sev  
stan  
visi  
dow  
atta  
me  
as  
wre  
low  
cha  
ed l  
the  
ed  
the  
spa  
es  
me  
wh  
bly  
of  
we  
has  
thi  
wh  
for  
for  
reli

an open space between us. Presently some men advanced towards us, two and two, bearing large poles upon their shoulders, waving their hands as they proceeded, and making a noise like singing. When they came near us, they made a show of walking quick, without advancing a single step. Several men, armed with large sticks, immediately started from the crowd, and ran towards the new visitors, but they instantly made off, having thrown down the poles from their shoulders. The others attacked the poles, and having beat them most unmercifully, returned to their places. The former, as they ran off, gave the challenge used here in wrestling; and, in a short time, some lusty fellows came from the same quarter, repeating the challenge as they approached. These were resisted by a company, who arrived at that instant from the opposite side. Both parties, however, returned to their own quarter, after having paraded about the area for some minutes. Afterwards, for the space of half an hour, wrestling and boxing-matches succeeded. Speeches were then delivered by two men, who seated themselves before the prince, with which the solemnity ended, and the whole assembly broke up.

In vain did we endeavour to find out the purport of the solemnity, called *Natche*. All the answer we received to our inquiries, was *taboo*; which, as has been already observed, is applied to many things. There was a mysterious solemnity in the whole transaction; and from the manner of performing it, as well as the place where it was performed, it was evident that there was a mixture of religion in the institution. Upon no other occasion

had they regarded our dress and deportment ; but now it was required that our hair should flow about our shoulders ; that we should be uncovered to the waist ; sit cross-legged ; and have our hands locked together. It should be observed also, that none but the chief people, and those who were concerned in the ceremony, were admitted to assist in the celebration of it. All these circumstances evidently pointed out that they supposed themselves acting under the inspection of a Supreme Being upon this occasion.

From the above account of the present *natche*, it may be considered as merely figurative. The few yams which were seen the first day, could not be meant as a general contribution ; and it was intimated to us, that they were a portion consecrated to the *Olooa*, or Divinity.

We were, however informed, that in the space of three months, there would be represented a more important solemnity ; on which occasion, the tribute of Tongataboo, Hapae, Vavaoo, and all the other islands, would be brought to the chief, and more awfully confirmed, by sacrificing ten human victims from amongst the people. A horrid solemnity indeed ! On our inquiring into the occasion of so barbarous a practice, we were informed, that it was a necessary part of the *Natche* ; and that, if omitted, the Deity would destroy their king.

The day was far spent before the breaking up of the assembly ; and as we were at some distance from the ships, we were impatient to set out from Mooa. Taking leave of Poulaho, he pressed us earnestly to stay till the next day, in order to be present at a funeral ceremony. The wife of Maicewagee

his mo  
count  
on boar  
tain Co  
to her,  
did no  
thither  
had no  
too, w  
derate  
the fu  
which,  
could r  
to stay  
that if  
him ag  
leave o  
o'clock

Whi  
at Moo  
cattle,  
be safer  
great n  
pasture  
here, a  
English  
them,  
improv  
nou al  
doc, fr  
we sail  
to thes  
is a fine  
useful.



his mother-in-law, had lately died ; and, on account of the *natche*, her corpse had been carried on board a canoe in the *lagoon*. Poulaho told captain Cook, that when he had paid the last offices to her, he would attend him to Eooa ; but if he did not choose to wait, that he would follow him thither. He would gladly have seen this ceremony, had not the tide been now favourable. The wind too, which had been very boisterous, was now moderate and settled. Besides, we were informed, the funeral ceremonies would continue five days, which, as the ships lay in such a situation that we could not get to sea at pleasure, was too long a time to stay. The captain, however, assured the king, that if he did not immediately sail, he would visit him again the next day. Whereupon we all took leave of him, and arrived at our ships about eight o'clock in the evening.

While the commodore was attending the *natche*, at Mooa, he ordered the horses, bul, and other cattle, to be brought thither, thinking they would be safer there than at a place that would be, in a great measure, deserted the moment after our departure. Besides, we had left with our friends here, a young English boar, and three young English sows. They were exceedingly desirous of them, naturally supposing that they would greatly improve their own breed, which is but small. Feenou also got two rabbits from us, a buck and a doe, from which young ones were produced before we sailed. If the cattle succeed, the acquisition to these islands will be great ; and as Tongataboo is a fine level country, the horses will be extremely useful.

We weighed anchor on the 10th, about eight o'clock in the morning, and, with a steady gale, turned through the channel, between the small isles called Makahaa and Monooafai. The flood, at first, set strong in our favour, till leading up to the *lagoon*, where the eastward flood meets that from the west. This, with the indraught of the *lagoon*, and of the shoals before it, occasioned strong riplings and whirlpools. Besides these disadvantages, the depth of the channel exceeds the length of a cable; consequently there can be no anchorage, except close to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms water, where a ship would be exposed to the whirlpools. The captain, therefore, abandoned the design he had formed of coming to an anchor when we were through the narrows, and afterwards of making an excursion to see the funeral. He rather chose to be absent from that ceremony than to leave the ships in so dangerous a situation. We plied to windward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or losing an inch, when we suddenly got into the influence of the eastern tide, where we expected the ebb to run strong to the eastward in our favour. It proved, however, very inconsiderable. Convinced that we could not get to sea before it was dark, we anchored under the shore of Tongataboo, in forty-five fathoms water. The *Discovery* dropped anchor under our stern; but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover it till about midnight.

After remaining in this station till eleven o'clock the next day, we weighed and plied to the eastward. At ten o'clock at night we weathered the

east e  
dlebu  
we an  
ty fa  
where  
he nar  
As  
and se  
seeme  
been o  
1773,  
each  
shore  
which  
Foa.  
this w  
ted to  
low an  
that w  
little  
we fou  
tended  
the sh  
be pro  
detak  
himse  
Tong  
Be  
for ho  
procu  
island  
Good  
ot T

east end of the island, and stretched away for Middleburg, or Eooa (as the inhabitants call it) where we anchored, about eight the next morning, in forty fathoms water; being nearly the same place where the captain took his station in 1773, when he named it *English Road*.

As soon as we had anchored, Taoofa the chief, and several of the natives, visited us on board, and seemed rejoiced at our arrival. This Taoofa had been captain Cook's *Tayo* when he was here in 1773, and therefore they were not strangers to each other. The captain accompanied him on shore in search of fresh water, the procuring of which was the chief object that brought him to Eooa. He had heard at Tongataboo of a stream there, which ran from the hills into the sea; but this was not the case at present. He was conducted to a brackish spring, among rocks, between low and high water mark. When they perceived that we did not approve of this, we were shown a little way into the island, where, in a deep chasin, we found some excellent water; which, though attended with some trouble, might be conveyed to the shore, by means of spouts or troughs, that might be provided for that purpose: but rather than undertake that tedious task, the captain contented himself with the supply the ships had received at Tongataboo.

Before he returned on board, he began a traffic for hogs and yams. Of the former we could not procure many; but, of the latter, plenty. At this island we landed the rams and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taoofa, who seemed delighted with his charge.

It was, perhaps, a fortunate circumstance that Ma-reewagee, to whom they had been given, as before related, slighted the present: as Eoo had no dogs upon it at present, it seemed to be a fitter place for the rearing of sheep than Tongataboo.

While we were lying at anchor, this island had a very different aspect from any that we had lately seen, and formed a most pleasing landscape. It is the highest of any we had seen since we had left New Zealand, and from its top, which appears to be almost flat, declines gradually towards the sea. The other isles, which form this cluster, being level, the eye cannot discover any thing except the trees that cover them; but here the land rising gently upwards, presents an extensive prospect, where groves of trees, in beautiful disorder, are interspersed at irregular distances. Near the shore it is quite shaded with a variety of trees, among which are erected the habitations of the natives; and to the right of where we were stationed was one of the most extensive groves of cocoa-palms that we had ever seen.

In the afternoon of the 13th, a party of us ascended the highest part of the island, a little to the right of our ships, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half way up, we crossed a deep valley, the bottom and sides of which were cloathed with trees. We found plenty of coral till we approached the summits of the highest hills; the soil near the top is, in general, a reddish clay; which, in many places, is very deep. On the most elevated part of the island we saw a round platform supported by a wall of coral stones. Our conductors informed us, that this mount had

been r  
they m  
called i  
tinguis  
small c  
lent v  
stream  
the rain  
in sever  
might

Fro  
the wh  
The so  
now u  
qualiti  
plains  
which  
ed wi  
scape  
was su  
the p  
might  
dows s  
Engla  
beneve  
deratio  
had no  
beside  
isles,  
tree.

All  
told,  
inhab

been raised by the direction of their chief; and that they met there, occasionally, to drink *kava*. They called it *Etebee*; by which name an erection was distinguished which we had seen at Tongataboo. At a small distance from it was a spring of most excellent water; and, about a mile lower down, a stream, which, we were told, ran into the sea when the rains were copious. We also discovered water in several small holes; and supposed that plenty might be found, by digging.

From this elevation we had a complete view of the whole island, except a small part to the south. The south-east side, from which the hills we were now upon are not far distant, rises with great inequalities, immediately from the sea; so that the plains and meadows lie all on the northwest side; which being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a most delightful landscape in every point of view. While captain Cook was surveying this enchanting prospect, he enjoyed the pleasing idea that some future navigators might, from the same eminence, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single benevolent purpose, exclusive of all other considerations, would sufficiently prove that our voyages had not been useless. We found, on this height, besides the plants common on the neighbouring isles, a species of *acrosticum*, *melastoma*, and fern-tree.

All, or most of the land on this island, we were told, belonged to the chiefs of Tongataboo; the inhabitants being only tenants, or vassals, to them.



This seemed, indeed, to be the case at all the neighbouring isles, except Annamooka, where some of the chiefs seemed to act with some kind of independence. Omai, who was much esteemed by Feenou and many others, was tempted with the offer of being appointed a chief of this island, if he would continue among them; and he seemed inclinable to have accepted the offer, had he not been advised to the contrary by captain Cook, though not because he thought he would do better for himself in his native isle.

Returning from our country excursion, we heard that a party of the natives, in the quarter where our people traded, had struck one of their own people with a club, which fractured his skull, and afterwards broke his thigh with the same instrument. No signs of life were remaining, when he was carried to a neighbouring house, but in a short time he recovered a little. On our desiring to know the reason of such severity, we were informed, that he had been discovered in an indelicate situation with a woman who was *taboo'd*. We soon understood, however, that she was no otherwise *taboo'd* than by belonging to another person, who was superior in rank to her gallant. We discovered from this circumstance, how these people punish such infidelities. But the female sinner, as we were informed, has a much milder punishment for her misdemeanor, and only receives a remonstrance and a very slight beating.

Captain Cook, the next morning, planted a pine-apple, and sowed the seeds of melons, and other articles, in the chief's plantation. He had reason, indeed, to suppose, that his endeavours of

this kin  
nips wa  
was th  
1773  
The  
ing, T  
order t  
for him  
expect  
friends  
departu  
chief th  
yams,  
collect  
greatest  
assemb  
ced on  
bouring  
vent th  
boxing  
in the  
The di  
with t  
happen  
least  
One o  
thirty  
down,  
Hearin  
and a  
only c  
the off  
seemed  
and to

this kind would not be fruitless; for a dish of turnips was, this day, served up at his dinner, which was the produce of the seeds he had left here in 1773.

The captain having fixed upon the 15th for sailing, Taofa pressed him to stay a little longer, in order to receive a present which he had prepared for him. His entreaties, together with the daily expectation of receiving a visit from some of his friends at Tongataboo, induced him to defer his departure. The next day he received from the chief the present; consisting of two little heaps of yams, and a quantity of fruit, which seemed to be collected as at the other isles. On this occasion the greatest part of the inhabitants of the island had assembled; and, as we had many times experienced on such numerous meetings among their neighbouring islanders, it gave no small trouble to prevent their pilfering. Cudgelling, wrestling, and boxing, were exhibited for our entertainment; and in the latter, combatants of both sexes engaged. The diversions were intended to have been finished with the *bomai*, or night-dance; but an accident happened that either put a total stop to it, or at least prevented our staying on shore to see it. One of our people was surrounded by twenty or thirty of the natives, some of whom knocked him down, stripped him, and carried off all his clothes. Hearing of this, the commodore seized two canoes, and a large hog, and insisted on the chief's not only causing the apparel to be restored, but also on the offenders being delivered up to him. Taofa seemed greatly concerned at what had happened, and took the necessary steps to satisfy him. The

people who were assembled were so alarmed at this affair, that most of them immediately fled. However, when they were informed that the captain meant to take no other measures to revenge the insult, they returned. One of the delinquents was soon delivered up to him, and a shirt and a pair of trowsers restored. The remainder of the stolen goods not coming in before the evening, the commodore was obliged to leave them, in order to go aboard; the sea running so high, that it was extremely difficult for the boats to get out of the creek even with day-light, and would be attended with much more danger in the dark. He came ashore again the next morning, bringing with him a present for Taoofa, in return for what he had received from him. Being early, there were but few people at the landing-place, and even those few not without their fears and apprehensions; but on the captain's desiring Omai to assure them that we did not mean to injure them; and having restored the canoes, and released the offender, who had been delivered up to him, they resumed their usual cheerfulness, and a large circle was presently formed, in which the chief and the principal men of the island took their respective places.

The remainder of the clothes were at length brought in, but, having been torn off the man's back by pieces, they were not thought worth carrying on board. Taoofa shared the present he had received with three or four other chiefs, reserving a small part only for himself. This donation so far exceeded their expectation, that a venerable old chief told the captain, they were not deserving of it, considering how little he had received from

them,  
met w  
they h  
after p  
day be  
Taoofa  
he sen  
his est  
presen

We  
at sou  
some o  
up the  
jured b  
that a  
southw  
enterin  
our shi  
ducted  
but ve  
able di  
those r  
seen an  
Eooa  
and th  
space o  
fore, t  
There  
format  
not a s  
cially a  
visions  
sides T  
ty of

them, and the ill-treatment one of his people had met with. Captain Cook continued with them till they had emptied their bowl of *kava*; and then, after paying for the hog, which he had taken the day before, returned on board, in company with Taoofa, and one of Poulaho's servants, by whom he sent a piece of bar iron, as a parting mark of his esteem for that chief, that being as valuable a present as any he could possibly make.

We weighed soon after, and, with a light breeze at southeast, stood out to sea, when Taoofa, and some other natives left us. We found, on heaving up the anchor, that the cable had been much injured by the rocks. Besides this, we experienced, that a most astonishing swell rolls in there from the southwest. Presently we observed a sailing canoe entering the creek before which we had anchored our ships. A few hours after, a small canoe, conducted by four men, came off to us: for, having but very little wind, we were still at no considerable distance from the land. We were informed by those men, that the sailing canoe which we had seen arrive, had brought directions to the people of Eooa to furnish us with hogs; and that the king and the other chiefs would be with us in the space of two or three days. They requested, therefore, that we would return to our former station. There was no reason to doubt the truth of this information; but, being now clear of the land, it was not a sufficient inducement to bring us back; especially as we had already a sufficient stock of provisions to last us in our passage to Otaheite. Besides Taoofa's present, we received a large quantity of yams at Eooa, in exchange for nails, &c.

and added considerably to our supply of hogs. Finding that we would not return, these people left us in the evening, as did some others, who had come off in two canoes, with cocoa-nuts and shad-docks, to barter for what they could get; their eagerness to possess more of our commodities, inducing them to follow us out to sea, and to continue their intercourse with us even to the last moment.

We have now taken leave of the Friendly Islands and their inhabitants, after a cordial intercourse with the latter for between two and three months. Some differences, indeed, occasionally happened, on account of their natural propensity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligence and inattention of our people. These differences, however, were never attended with any fatal consequences; and few, belonging to our ships, parted from their friends without some regret.

‘The time employed among the natives of the Friendly Islands,’ says captain Cook, ‘was not thrown away. We expended very little of our sea provisions; subsisting, in general, upon the produce of the islands while we staid; and carrying away with us a quantity of refreshments sufficient to last till our arrival at another station where we could depend upon a fresh supply. I was not sorry, besides, to have had an opportunity of bettering the condition of these good people, by leaving several very useful animals among them; and, at the same time, those designed for Otaheite, received fresh strength in the pastures of Tongataboo. Upon the whole, therefore, the advantages we received, by

touch  
dition  
ceived  
tion of  
for pr  
alread  
of bea

Iron

Axes,  
files, a  
colours  
in grea  
are blu  
white  
chased  
neverth  
nament  
disrega  
Annam  
them in

rived,  
vogue,  
mentio

In r  
all the  
be pro  
ly Islan  
section  
tains, a  
same an

Go  
be four



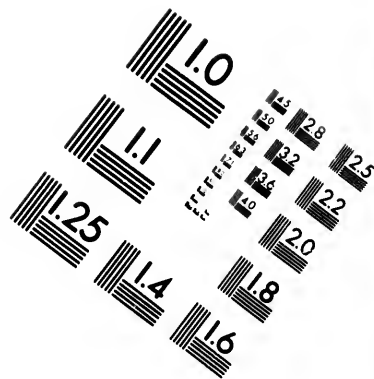
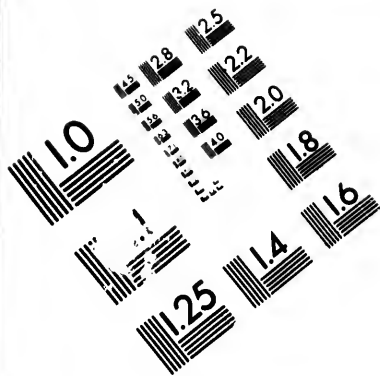
touching here, were very great; and I had the additional satisfaction to reflect, that they were received, without retarding one moment the prosecution of the great object of our voyage; the season for proceeding to the North, being as has been already observed, lost, before I took the resolution of bearing away for these islands.

Iron tools are the best articles for traffic here. Axes, hatchets, nails of all sizes, knives, rasps, and files, are much demanded. Red cloth, white and coloured linen, looking-glasses and beads, are also in great estimation; but of the latter, those which are blue are preferred to all others, especially the white ones. A hog might, at any time, be purchased by a string of large blue beads: it should, nevertheless be observed, that articles, merely ornamental, may be highly esteemed at one time, and disregarded at another. On our first arrival at Annamooka, the people were unwilling to take them in exchange for fruit; but, when Feenou arrived, his approbation of them brought them into vogue, and stamped them with the value above-mentioned.

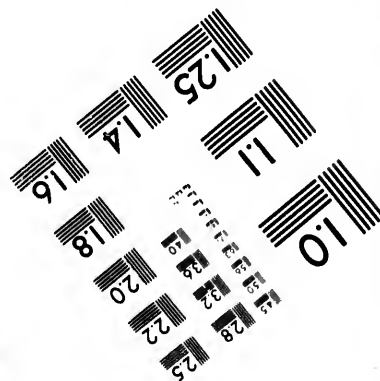
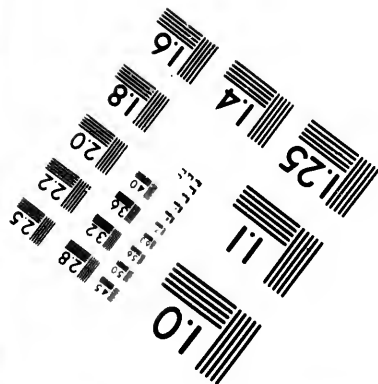
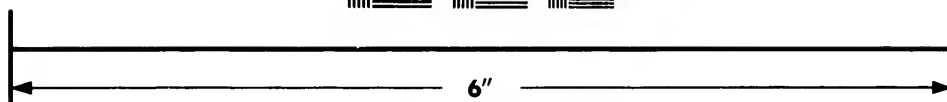
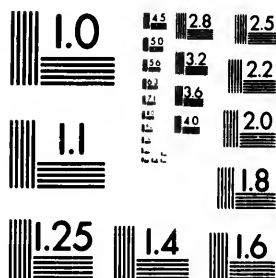
In return for the commodities just enumerated, all the refreshments that the islands produce may be procured. The yams produced by the Friendly Islands are excellent, and when grown to perfection, preserve well at sea: but their pork, plantains, and bread-fruit, are inferior in quality to the same articles at Otaheite.

Good water is scarce in these islands. It may be found indeed in all of them, but not to serve





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 822-4503

13 28  
15 32 25  
16 22  
18 20

11  
01  
11

the purposes of navigators ; for either the situations are too inconvenient, or the quantities too inconsiderable. Whilst we lay at anchor under Kotoo, we were informed that there was a stream of water at Kao, which ran from the mountains into the sea, on the southwest side of the island. This intelligence may probably deserve the attention of future navigators.

We must include under the denomination of Friendly Islands, not only the group at Hapae, but also those which have been discovered to the north, nearly under the same meridian, as well as some others under the dominion of Tongataboo, which is the capital, and seat of government.

From the best information we could receive, this archipelago is very extensive. One of the natives enumerated one hundred and fifty islands, and Mr Anderson procured all their names. Sixty one of them are marked upon our chart of the Friendly Islands, and upon the sketch of the harbour of Tongataboo. Keppel's and Boscawen's Islands, two of captain Wallis's discoveries in 1765, are doubtless comprehended in Mr Anderson's list.

But the most considerable of all the islands that we heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamoa, Vavaoo, and Feejee ; each of which is larger than Tongataboo, but it does not appear that any European has ever yet seen any one of them.

Hamoa lies two days sail northwest from Vavaoo. It is said to be the largest of all their islands ; affords harbours and good water, and produces in abundance all the articles of refreshment that are found at the places we visited. Poulaho frequent

ly r  
are  
F  
abo  
with  
are  
larg  
min  
Feej  
each  
ofte  
the  
hand  
to th  
surp  
selve  
bows  
tice  
battl  
It  
occa  
could  
cont  
held  
boo,  
cava  
they  
on t  
ties  
peac  
freq  
they  
it m  
neig



ly resides upon this island; and the people here are in high estimation at Tongataboo.

Feejee lies in the direction of northwest by west, about three days sail from Tongataboo. It abounds with hogs, dogs, fowls, and such fruits and roots as are to be found in any of the others, and is much larger than Tongataboo; but not subject to its dominion, as the other islands of the archipelago are. Feejee and Tongataboo often engage in war against each other; and the inhabitants of the latter are often so much afraid of this enemy, that they bend the body forward, and cover the face with their hands, to express the sense of their own inferiority to the Feejee men. This is, indeed, no matter of surprise, for those of Feejee have rendered themselves formidable, by their dexterity in the use of bows and slings; but more so, by their savage practice of eating such of their enemies as they kill in battle.

It has been insisted on, that extreme hunger first occasioned men to feed on human flesh; but where could be the inducement for the Feejee people to continue the practice in the midst of plenty? It is held in detestation by the inhabitants of Tongataboo, who seem to cultivate the friendship of their savage neighbours of Feejee through fear; though they occasionally venture to skirmish with them on their own territory, and carry off large quantities of red feathers as trophies. When a profound peace reigns between the two islands, they have frequently intercourse together; tho' it is probable they have not been long known to each other; or, it might be supposed that Tongataboo, and its neighbouring islands, would, before this time, have

been supplied with a breed of dogs, which are numerous at Feejee, and were not brought to Tongataboo when captain Cook first visited it in 1773.

The colour of the natives of Feejee was at least a shade darker than that of the inhabitants of the other Friendly Islands. We saw one of the natives of Feejee, who had his left ear slit, and the lobe so stretched, that it almost extended to his shoulder; which singularity had been observed by captain Cook at other islands of the South Sea, during his second voyage. The Feejee men were much revered here; not only on account of their power and cruelty in war, but also for their ingenuity; for they greatly excel the inhabitants of Tongataboo in workmanship. Specimens were shown us of their clubs and spears, which were ingeniously carved. We were also shown some of their beautifully chequered cloth, variegated mats, earthen pots, and other articles, all of which displayed a superiority in the execution.

Feejee, as has been already mentioned, is three days sail from Tongataboo; these people having no other method of discovering the distance from island to island, but by mentioning the time required for the voyage in one of their canoes. That this might be ascertained with precision, captain Cook sailed in one of their canoes, and, by repeated trials with the log, found that she went close hauled, in a gentle gale, seven miles in an hour. He supposed from this, that they will sail, with such breezes as in general blow in their seas, seven or eight miles in an hour on an average. Each day, however is not to be reckoned at twenty-four hours; for when they talk of one day's sail, they mean no more than

from  
hour  
day  
days  
and,  
scure  
from  
vesse  
shift,  
inten  
story  
Wate  
are r  
Th  
is su  
island  
city,  
enter  
ture d  
espec  
we l  
safety  
Th  
feren  
at A  
good  
cured  
Besid  
the g  
ment  
reef d  
three  
Th  
cular

from the morning to the evening, or ten or twelve hours at the most. From the morning of the first day till the evening of the second, is with them two days sail. In the day they are guided by the sun; and, in the night, by stars. When these are obscured, they can only have recourse to the points from whence the winds and waves come upon the vessel. If, at that time, the winds and waves should shift, they are quite bewildered, often missing their intended port, and being never heard of more. The story of Omai's countrymen, who were driven to Wateoo, convinces us, however, that those who are not heard of, are not always lost.

The harbour and anchoring-place of Tongataboo is superior to any we have met with among these islands, as well from its great security, as its capacity, and goodness of bottom. The risk we ran in entering it from the north, should caution every future commander from attempting that passage again, especially with a ship of burden, since that by which we left it may be pursued with greater ease and safety.

Though the harbour of Tongataboo has the preference, its water is exceeded in goodness by that at Annamooka, and yet this cannot be reckoned good. Tolerable water may, nevertheless, be procured, by digging holes near the side of the pond. Besides, Annamooka being nearly in the centre of the group, is the best situate for procuring refreshments from the others. There is a creek in the reef on the north side of the island, wherein two or three ships may lie securely.

Those who are desirous of having a more particular description of the Friendly Islands, must have

recourse to the chart, where every thing is delineated as accurately as circumstances would permit. To the same chart recourse may also be had for tracing the several stations of the ships, and their route.

What may have been here omitted; concerning the geography of these islands, will be found in the history of captain Cook's last voyage<sup>\*</sup>; to which narrative the reader is referred†, for such particulars as he had then observed. At present we shall only relate such interesting circumstances as either were omitted in that account, or were imperfectly and incorrectly represented.

After living among them between two and three months, it is reasonable to expect that we should be able to clear up every difficulty, and to give a tolerably good account of their manners, customs, and institutions, civil as well as religious; particularly as we had a person with us, who, by understanding their language as well as ours, might be enabled to act as an interpreter. But Omai was not qualified for that task. Unless we had before us the object or thing concerning which we wanted information, we found it difficult to obtain a competent knowledge from his explanations. Omai was certainly more liable to make mistakes than we were: for, having no curiosity, he never troubled himself with making remarks; and when he attempted to explain matters to us, his ideas were apparently so limited, and, probably, differed so much from ours, that his confused accounts, instead of instructing often only perplexed us. Besides, we

<sup>\*</sup> Cook's Voyage, Vol. I. p. 211, 213. † Ibid. p. 213, 225.



delineat-  
permit.  
had for  
and their  
ncerning  
nd in the  
to which  
a particu-  
we shall  
as either  
perfectly  
and three  
we should  
to give a  
customs,  
; particu-  
by under-  
might be  
Omai was  
had before  
we wanted  
in a com-  
Omai was  
than we  
er troubled  
hen he at-  
s were ap-  
ed so much  
stead of in-  
esides, we  
p. 213. 225.

could seldom find a person, among the natives, who had both the ability and inclination to give us the information we required. And many of them, we observed, appeared offended at being asked, what they, perhaps, deemed frivolous questions. At Tongataboo, where we continued the longest, our situation was likewise unavourable; being in a part of the country, where, except fishers, there were but few inhabitants. With our visitors, as well as with those we visited, it was always holiday; so that we could not observe what was really the domestic way of living among the natives. That we could not, therefore, in this situation, bring away satisfactory accounts of many things, is not the least surprising. Some of us, indeed, endeavoured, by diligent observation, to remedy those disadvantages; and we are indebted to Mr Anderson, for a considerable share of what information we obtained.

The Friendly Islanders seldom exceed the common stature, (though some here were above six feet in height) and are strong and well proportioned. Their shoulders are, in general, broad; and we saw several who were really handsome, though their muscular disposition rather conveyed the idea of strength than of beauty. Their features are so various, that, unless it be by a fulness at the point of the nose, which is common, it is impossible to fix any general likeness by which to characterise them. On the other hand, many genuine Roman noses, and hundreds of European faces, were seen amongst them. They have good eyes and teeth; but the latter are neither so well set, nor so remarkably white as among the Indian nations. Few of



them, however, have that uncommon thickness about the lips, so frequent in other islands.

The women are less distinguished from the men by their features, than by their general form, which seems destitute of that strong fleshy firmness that appears in the latter. Though the features of some are very delicate, and a true index of their sex, laying claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression, yet the rule is not, by any means, so general as in many other countries. This is generally, however, the most exceptionable part; for the bodies and limbs of most of the females are well proportioned; and some absolutely perfect models of a beautiful figure. But the most remarkable distinction in the women, is the uncommon smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with the finest in Europe.

The general colour is a cast deeper than the copper brown; but several of the men and women have a true olive complexion; and some of the last are even a great deal fairer; which is probably the effect of being less exposed to the sun; as a tendency to corpulence, in a few of the principal people, seems to be the consequence of a more indolent life. It is also amongst the last, that a soft clear skin is most frequently observed. Amongst the bulk of the people, the skin is, more commonly, of a dull hue, with some degree of roughness, especially the parts that are not covered; which, perhaps, may be occasioned by some cutaneous disease. We saw a man and boy at Hapae, and a child at Annamooka, perfectly white. Such have been found amongst all black nations; but, I ap-

preh  
a na

U  
defo  
obse  
Nei  
num  
ring  
beh  
misc  
quer  
larg  
some  
ticul  
to be  
gene  
consi  
and  
nativ  
visite  
vene  
of t  
that  
our  
ther  
some  
tain  
that  
com  
ineff  
it m  
its d  
way  
lence

prehend, that their colour is rather a disease than a natural phenomenon.

Upon the whole, however, few natural defects or deformities are to be seen among them; tho' we observed two or three with their feet bent inwards. Neither are they exempt from some diseases. Vast numbers of them are affected with the tetter or ringworm, which leaves whitish serpentine marks behind it. But they have another disease of a more mischievous consequence, which is also very frequent, and appears on every part of the body, in large broad ulcers, discharging a thin, clear pus, some of which had a very virulent appearance, particularly on the face. Some, however, appeared to be cured of it, and others mending; but it was generally attended with the loss of the nose, or a considerable part of it. It being certainly known, and even acknowledged by themselves, that the natives were subject to this disease before they were visited by the English, it cannot be the effect of venereal contagion, notwithstanding the similitude of the symptoms; unless we adopt a supposition, that the venereal disorder was introduced here by our people in 1773. It certainly was amongst them at this time; for, soon after we arrived there, some of our people received the infection; and captain Cook had the mortification to learn from thence that all the care he took in 1773, to prevent the communication of this dreadful disease, had proved ineffectual. They do not seem, however, to regard it much; and, as we did not see many instances of its destroying effects, perhaps the climate, and the way of living of these people, may abate its virulence. Two other diseases are common among

them; one of which is a firm swelling, which affects the legs and arms; the other is a tumour in the testicles, which sometimes exceeds the size of the two fists. In other respects, they are remarkably healthy, not a single person having, during our stay, been confined to the house by any kind of sickness. Their strength and activity are, in every respect, answerable to their muscular appearance; and they exert both, in such a manner, as to prove that they are as yet little debilitated by the numerous diseases that are the natural consequence of indolence.

The graceful mien and firmness of step with which they walk, are obvious proofs of their personal accomplishments. They consider this as a thing so necessary to be acquired, that their laughter was excited when they saw us frequently stumbling upon the roots of trees, or other inequalities in walking.

Their countenances very remarkably express the abundant mildness, or good-nature, which they possess; and are entirely free from that savage keenness which marks nations in a barbarous state. One would, indeed, be apt to fancy, that they had been bred up under the severest restrictions, to acquire an aspect so settled, and such a command of their passions, as well as steadiness in conduct. But they are, at the same time, frank, cheerful, and good-humoured; though sometimes, in the presence of their chiefs, they put on a degree of gravity, and such a serious air, as becomes stiff and awkward, and has an appearance of reserve.

Their peaceable disposition is sufficiently evinced, from the friendly reception all strangers have met

with  
to at  
the  
their  
hosti  
ed p  
visite  
unite  
no na  
less  
to ex  
to an  
us.  
good  
good  
nessec  
humane  
rance  
our s  
ving.  
Th  
know  
found  
and t  
the co  
condu  
for, in  
had r  
pen m  
count  
less in  
indisc  
people  
foibles

with, who have visited them. Instead of offering to attack them openly, or clandestinely, as has been the case with most of the inhabitants of these seas, they have never appeared, in the smallest degree, hostile; but, on the contrary, like the most civilized people, have courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering, which is the only medium that unites all nations in a sort of friendship. Perhaps, no nation in the world traffic with more honesty and less distrust. We could always safely permit them to examine our goods, and to hand them about, one to another; and they put the same confidence in us. If either party repented of the bargain, the goods were re-exchanged with mutual consent and good-humour. Upon the whole, they seemed possessed of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind; such as industry, ingenuity, perseverance, affability, and perhaps, other virtues which our short stay with them might prevent our observing.

The only defect sullyng their character, that we know of, is a propensity to thieving; to which, we found those of all ages, and both sexes addicted, and to an uncommon degree. It should, however, be considered, that this exceptionable part of their conduct seemed to exist merely with respect to us; for, in their general intercourse with one another, I had reason to be of opinion, that thefts do not happen more frequently (perhaps less so) than in other countries, the dishonest practices of whose worthless individuals are not supposed to authorise any indiscriminate censure on the whole body of the people. Great allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor natives of the Pacific Ocean,



whose minds were overpowered with the glare of objects, equally new to them, as they were captivating. Stealing, amongst the civilized and enlightened nations of the world, may well be considered as denoting a character deeply stained with moral turpitude, with avarice unrestrained by the known rules of right, and with profligacy producing extreme indigence, and neglecting the means of relieving it. But at the Friendly and other islands which we visited, the thefts so frequently committed by the natives, of what we had brought along with us, may be fairly traced to less culpable motives. They seemed to arise, solely, from an intense curiosity or desire to possess something which they had not been accustomed to before, and belonging to a sort of people so different from themselves. And perhaps, if it were possible, that a set of beings, seemingly as superior in our judgment, as we are in theirs, should appear amongst us, it might be doubted, whether our natural regard to justice would be able to restrain many from falling into this error.

The hair of these islanders is, in general, thick, straight, and strong; though some have it bushy or frizzled. The natural colour appears to be black, but many of the men, and some of the women, stain it of a brown, or purple colour; and a few give it an orange cast. The first of these colours is produced by applying a sort of plaister of burnt coral mixed with water; the second, by the raspings of a reddish wood, mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is said to be the effect of *turmeric root*.

They are so whimsical in their fashions of wearing their hair, that it is difficult to say which

most  
the  
some  
part  
side.  
with  
usua  
and  
The  
the n  
This  
fine  
duce  
mean  
are t  
The  
print  
of di  
custo  
super  
only  
is thu  
They  
pract  
T  
of a  
bread  
is do  
to th  
ment  
ral f  
and  
is the  
piece



most in vogue. Some have none on one side of the head, while it remains long on the other side ; some have only a part of it cut short ; others have parted with the whole, except a single lock on one side. Some permit it to grow to its full length, without any of these mutilations. The women usually wear it short. The beards too are cut short ; and both sexes strip the hair from their arm-pits. The men are stained with a deep blue colour from the middle of the belly, to half way down the thighs. This is effected with a flat bone instrument, full of fine teeth, which by a stroke of a bit of stick introduces the juice of *dooe dooe* into the skin, by which means indelible marks are made. Lines and figures are thus traced, which, in some are very elegant. The women have only some small lines, thus imprinted, in the inside of their hands. As a mark of distinction, their kiags are exempted from this custom. The men are not circumcised, but rather supercised ; the operation consists in cutting off only a piece of the foreskin at the upper part, which is thus rendered incapable of ever covering the *glans*. They have no other aim in this operation, but only practise it from a notion of cleanliness.

The dress of both sexes is the same ; consisting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two yards in breadth, and two yards and a half in length. It is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs down to the middle of the leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is plaited into several folds, which extended, is sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders. This, as to form, is the general dress ; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the superior class

of people. The inferior sort are contented with small pieces, and very often have only a covering made of leaves of plants, or the *maro*, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a sash. They pass this between the thighs and round the waist. It is seldom used but by the men; in their *haiwas*, or grand entertainments, they have various dresses, which, though the same in form, are embellished, more or less, with red feathers.

Both men and women occasionally defend their faces from the sun with little bonnets, made of various sorts of materials.

The ornaments worn by those of either sex are the same. Those which are most common are necklaces made of the fruit of the *pandanus*, and various sweet-smelling flowers, known by the general name of *kabulla*. Others consist of small shells, shark's teeth, the wing and leg-bones of birds, &c. all which are pendent upon the breast. In this manner, they often wear a polished mother-of-pearl shell, or a ring, on the upper part of the arm; rings of tortoise-shell on the fingers; and several of these joined together, formed into bracelets on the wrists.

Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, in which they wear cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole, and drawn out of the other; or bits of reed filled with a yellow pigment. This appears to be a fine powder of *turmeric*, which the women rub all over their bodies, in the same manner as the European ladies use their dry rouge upon their cheeks.

Personal cleanliness is their delight, to produce which they bathe frequently in the ponds. Tho' the water has an intolerable stench in most of them,

they always prefer them to the sea ; and they are so sensible that their skin is injured with salt water, that, when they are obliged to bathe in the sea, they have fresh water poured over them to wash off its bad effects. They are extravagantly fond of cocoa-nut oil ; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and shoulders, and rub the body all over with a smaller quantity.

The domestic life of these people is neither so laborious as to be disagreeable, nor so free from employment as to suffer them to degenerate into indolence. Their country has been so favoured by nature, that the first can scarcely occur ; and their disposition appears to be a sufficient bar to the last. By this fortunate concurrence of circumstances, their necessary labour seems to yield, in its turn, to their amusements and recreations, which are never interrupted by the thoughts of being obliged to recur to business till they are induced by satiety to wish for that transition. The employment of the women is not difficult ; and is generally such as they can execute in the house. The making of cloth is entirely intrusted to their care ; the process of which manufacture has been already described. The cloth in general is able to resist water for some time ; but that which has the strongest glaze is the least liable to be penetrated with that fluid.

Another manufacture, which is also consigned to the women, is that of their mats, which excel those of most other countries, both with respect to their texture and their beauty. Of these mats there are seven or eight different sorts, which they either wear or sleep upon ; and many are merely ornamental. The last are principally made from the

tough, membraneous part of the stock of the plantain-tree; those that they wear, are generally composed of the *pandanus*; and the coarser kind, on which they sleep, are formed from a plant called *evarra*. There are several other articles of less importance, that employ their females; as combs, of which they make great quantities; and small baskets made of the same substance as the mats, and others composed of the fibrous husk of the coconut, either interwoven with beads, or plain; all which are finished with extraordinary neatness and taste.

The province of the men is, as might reasonably be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the other sex. Architecture, boat-building, agriculture, and fishing, are the principal objects of their care. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief subsistence, they find it necessary to practise husbandry, which they have brought by their diligence to some degree of perfection. In planting yams and plantains, they dig small holes for their reception, and afterwards root up the surrounding grass. The instruments used by them for this purpose are called *hooo*; and are nothing more than stakes of various lengths, flattened and sharpened to an edge at one end; and the largest ones have a short piece fixed transversely, by means of which they press the implement into the ground with the foot. When they plant the two above-mentioned vegetables, they observe such particular exactness, that, which ever way you turn your eyes, the rows present themselves complete and regular.

The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut-trees, are dispersed about, without any order ; and, when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. The same may be said of another large tree, which produces a roundish compressed nut, called *eeefee* ; and of a smaller tree bearing an oval nut, with two or three triangular kernels. The *kappe* is, in general, planted regularly, and in large spots ; but the *mawhaha* is interspersed among other things, as are also the yams and *jeejee*. Sugar-cane is usually in small spots, closely crowded. The mulberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good space allowed for it. The *pandanus* is commonly planted in a row, close together, at the sides of the fields.

They display very little taste or ingenuity in the construction of their houses. Those of the lower class of people are wretched huts, scarce sufficient to shelter them from the weather. Those of the better sort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable. A house of a middling size is of the following dimensions, viz. about twelve feet in height, twenty in breadth, and thirty in length. Their houses are, properly speaking, thatched roofs or sheds, supported by rafters and posts. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with thick matting. Some of their habitations are open all round ; but the major part of them are enclosed on the weather side with strong mats, or with branches of the cocoa-nut-tree plaited or interwoven with each other. A thick mat, about three feet broad, bent into a semicircular form, and placed edgeways, with the ends touching the side of the house, encloses a sufficient space for the master and



mistress to sleep in. The rest of the family sleep upon any part of the floor, the unmarried men and women lying apart from each other. If the family is large, there are little huts adjoining, in which the servants sleep. Their whole furniture consists of some wooden stools, which serve them for pillows; baskets of different sizes, in which they put their combs, fish-hooks, and tools; two or three wooden bowls, in which they make *kava*; some cocoa-nut shells, a few gourds, and a bundle or two of cloth.

They are very skilful in building their canoes, which, indeed, are the most perfect of their mechanical productions. The double ones are made sufficiently large to carry about fifty persons, and sail at a great rate. Upon them they generally fix a hut or shed, for the reception of the master and his family. They are made of the bread-fruit tree, and the workmanship is extremely neat. They appear on the outside as if they were composed of one solid piece; but, upon closer inspection, they are found to consist of a great number of pieces, which fit each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inside are secured together with cocoa-nut line. The single canoes are furnished with an outrigger. The only tools which they make use of in the construction of these boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a smooth black stone; augers, made of shark's teeth; and rasps, composed of the rough skin of a fish, fastened on flat pieces of wood. The same tools are all they have for other works, except shells, which serve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, which, though not above ten inches long, they plait about

the size of a quill, to whatever length is required, and roll it up in balls; from which the ropes of a larger size are made, by twisting several of those together. Their fishing-lines are as strong and even as our best cord. Their small hooks consist entirely of pearl-shell; but the large ones are only covered with it on the back; and the points of both are, in general, of tortoise-shell. With the large hooks they catch albigores, and bonnetos, by putting them to a bamboo-rod, about twelve feet long, with a line of the same length. They have also numbers of small seines, some of which are of the most delicate texture.

Their musical reeds or pipes, which resemble the *syrinx* of the ancients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel to each other, most of which are of unequal lengths. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and are closed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the first, are used by them in playing. They close the left nostril with the thumb of the left hand, and blow into the hole at one end with the other nostril. The fore-finger of the right hand is applied to the lowest hole on the right, and the middle finger of the left to the first hole on that side. In this manner, with only three notes, they produce a pleasing, tho' simple music. Their *nassa*, or drum, has been already described,

Their warlike weapons are clubs, curiously ornamented, spears, and darts. They also make bows and arrows; but these are intended for amusement, such as shooting at birds, and not for the purposes of war. Their stools, or rather pillows, are about

two feet long, but only four or five inches in height, and near four in breadth, inclining downwards towards the middle; with four strong legs and circular feet; the whole composed of brown or black wood, neatly polished, and sometimes inlaid with ivory. They likewise inlay with ivory the handles of fly-flaps; and, with a shark's tooth, shape bones into figures of men, birds, &c.

Their vegetable diet principally consists of plantains, cocoa-nuts, breadfruit, and yams. Their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fish, and fowls; but the common people frequently eat rats. Their hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, seem to be only occasional dainties, reserved for persons of rank. Their food is, in general, dressed by baking as at Otaheite; and they make, from different sorts of fruit, several dishes, which are very good. They sometimes boil their fish in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which serve as a bag to hold both fish and water: having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon stones heated for the purpose: when they are sufficiently done, they not only eat the fish, but drink the liquor or soup. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery, or their manner of eating. Their usual drink at their meals is water, or cocoa-nut milk, the *kava* being only their morning beverage. The food that is served up to the chiefs is generally laid upon plantain-leaves. The king, at his meals, was commonly attended upon by three or four of the natives, one of whom cut large pieces of the fish, or of the joint, another afterwards divided it into mouthfuls, and the rest stood by with cocoa-nuts, and whatever else he might happen to want.

We never  
sociable  
women  
with the  
are not  
This di  
know no

They  
as it bec  
also in t  
They ar  
quence  
ral hous  
bled in s  
spot in t  
selves b  
Their p  
singing,  
snap the  
*oobai*; b  
parties, c  
constitut  
or *haiva*  
with the  
of the m  
and grac

We c  
their ma  
of solemn  
major pa  
one wife  
ral wom  
thought  
the fami

We never observed a large company sit down to a sociable meal, by eating from the same dish. The women are not excluded from taking their meals with the men; but there are certain ranks that are not allowed either to eat or drink together. This distinction begins with his majesty, but we know not where it ends.

They rise at day-break, and retire to rest as soon as it becomes dark. They, for the most part, sleep also in the day time, when the weather is very hot. They are fond of associating together; in consequence of which, it is not uncommon to find several houses empty, and the possessors of them assembled in some other house, or upon some convenient spot in the neighbourhood, where they relax themselves by conversation and other amusements. Their private diversions chiefly consist of dancing, singing, and music. When two or three women snap their fingers, and sing in concert, it is called *oobai*; but when there are more, they form several parties, each of which sings in a different key, which constitutes an agreeable melody, and is termed *beeva* or *baiva*. The songs are generally accompanied with the music of their flutes. The dances both of the men and women are performed with an ease and grace which are difficult to be described.

We could not determine with precision, whether their marriages were rendered durable by any kind of solemn contract: it is certain, however, that the major part of the people contented themselves with one wife. The chiefs, indeed, commonly have several women, though there was only one who (as we thought) was considered in the light of mistress of the family. Though female chastity seemed to be

held in little estimation, not a single breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to our knowledge, during our whole continuance at these islands; nor were the unmarried women of rank more liberal of their favours. But there were great numbers of a very different character.

The concern shown by these islanders for the dead is a strong proof of their humanity. Besides the *tooge*, which we have mentioned before, and burnt circles and scars, they strike a shark's tooth into their heads till the blood flows considerably, beat their teeth with stones, and thrust spears not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but also into the inner part of their thighs, and into their sides. The more painful operations, however, are only practised when they mourn the death of those who were most nearly connected with them. When one of them dies, he is wrapped up in mats and cloth, and then interred. The *fiatookas* seem to be appropriated to the chiefs and other persons of distinction, as their burial places; but the inferior people have no particular spot set apart for their interment. It is uncertain what part of the mourning ceremony follows immediately afterwards; but there is something besides the general one which is continued for a considerable time, the funeral of Mareewagee's wife being attended with ceremonies of five days duration. They seem to consider death as a great evil, to avert which they practise a very singular custom. When captain Cook, during his second voyage first visited these islands, he observed that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reason of which mutilation he could not then obtain a satis-

factory answer. They perceived that some of them may bring the little finger of a kind of consciousness to them, they make only one person and they on that hand ed finger of people account of respective

When they form their considered, in ed thereby but their temporal tion of future present life meet with fore put divinities deities, as they say most thin the wind, tion, that the produ consumed with sick



factory account. But he was now informed, that they perform this operation when they are afflicted with some dangerous disorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They suppose, that the little finger will be accepted of by the Deity, as a kind of propitiatory sacrifice sufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make use of a stone hatchet. There was scarcely one person in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they sometimes cut so close, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is also common for the lower class of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the chiefs to whom they respectively belong.

When the rigid strictness with which they perform their mourning and religious ceremonies is considered, it might be expected, that they endeavoured thereby to secure to themselves eternal happiness; but their principal object regards things merely temporal; for they have apparently little conception of future punishment for sins committed in the present life. They believe, however, that they meet with just punishment upon earth; and therefore put every method in practice to render their divinities propitious. They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to *Kallafootonga*, who they say is a female, and the supreme author of most things, residing in the heavens and directing the wind, rain and thunder, &c. They are of opinion, that when she is much displeased with them, the productions of the earth are blasted, many things consumed by lightening, and themselves afflicted with sickness and death; but that when her anger

abates, every thing is immediately restored to its former state. Among their subordinate deities, they mention *Futafaihe*, or *Footafooa*, who has the administration of the sea, and its productions; *Toofua-boolootoo*, god of the clouds and fog; *Talletoboo*, *Mattaba*, *Tareeava*, and others. The same system of religion does not extend all over the Friendly Islands; the supreme deity of Hapae, for instance, being called *Alo Alo*. They entertain very absurd opinions relative to the power and various attributes of these beings, who, they suppose, have no farther concern with them after death. They have, however, juster sentiments respecting the immortality and immateriality of the soul; which they call life, the living principle, or an *Otooa*, that is a divinity. They imagine, that immediately after death the souls of their chiefs are separated from their bodies, and go to a delightful region called *Boolootoo*, the god of which is called *Goolebo*. By this *Goolebo* they probably personify death. His country, according to their mythology, is the general repository of the dead; and those who are once conveyed thither, are no more subject to death, but feast on all the favourite productions of their native soil, with which this blissful abode is plentifully furnished. As for the souls of people of an inferior class, they are supposed by them to suffer a kind of transmigration; or are eaten up (they say) by a bird called *loata*, which walks upon the graves with that intent.

They do not worship any visible part of the creation, or any thing made by their own hands. They make no offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit (as is the custom at Otaheite) unless emblematically. But

there see  
ing up b  
are, in g  
ship: so  
propriate  
were sm

We a  
governm  
feudal sy  
blished  
the const  
some of  
unbound  
the lives  
few circu  
servation  
idea of de  
old Toob  
reign, an  
sures of  
splendour  
who, nex  
chiefs in  
nou appea  
ty. But  
principal  
tally subj  
severally

The is  
merous di  
who distr  
in his ow  
estates in  
lies. Th

there seems to be no reason to doubt of their offering up human sacrifices. Their *fiatookas* or *morais* are, in general, burying-grounds and places of worship: some of them, however, appeared to be appropriated only to the former purpose; but these were small, and greatly inferior to the rest.

We are very little acquainted with their form of government. A subordination, resembling the feudal system of our ancestors in Europe, is established among them; but of its subdivisions, and the constituents parts, we are ignorant. Though some of them informed us that the king's power is unbounded, and that he has the absolute disposal of the lives and properties of his subjects; yet the few circumstances that offered themselves to our observation contradicted rather than confirmed, the idea of despotic sway. Marcewagee, Feenou, and old Toobou, acted each the part of a petty sovereign, and not unfrequently counteracted the measures of the king. Nor was his court superior in splendour to those of old Toobou and Marcewagee, who, next to his Majesty, were the most potent chiefs in these islands; and, next after them, Feenou appeared to stand highest in rank and authority. But, however independent of the king the principal men may be, the inferior people are totally subject to the will of the chiefs to whom they severally belong.

The island of Tongataboo is divided into numerous districts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who distributes justice, and decides disputes, within his own territory. Most of these chieftains have estates in other islands, whence they procure supplies. The king, at stated times, receives the pro-

duct of his distant domains at Tongataboo, which is not only the usual place of his residence, but the abode of most persons of distinction among these islands. Its inhabitants frequently call it the Land of Chiefs, and stigmatize the subordinate isles with the appellations of Lands of Servants.

The chiefs are styled by the people lords of the earth, and also of the sun and sky. The royal family assume the name of Fufafaihe, from the god distinguished by that appellation, who is probably considered by them as their tutelary patron. The king's peculiar title is simply *Tooe Tonga*. The order and decorum observed in his presence, and likewise in that of the other chiefs, are truly admirable. Whenever he sits down, all the attendants seat themselves before him, forming a semicircle, and leaving a sufficient space between them and him, into which no one, unless he has particular business, presumes to come. Nor is any one suffered to sit, or pass behind him, or even near him, without his permission. When a person wishes to speak to his majesty, he comes forward, and having seated himself before him, delivers in a few words what he has to say; then, after being favoured with an answer from his seat, unless he is to receive an order; in which case he rises from his place, and seats himself cross-legged,\* before his majesty. To speak to the king standing would here be considered as a glaring mark of rudeness.

None of the most civilized nations have ever ex-

\* It may be proper to mention here, on the authority of captain King, that this posture is peculiar to the men; for the females always sit with both their legs thrown a little on one side.

ceeded  
larity m  
submissi  
chiefs,  
among  
self in  
harangu  
frequent  
most pro  
rangue;  
port of t  
when an  
signs of  
inclined  
er.

It is a  
of the k  
or rather  
ever he v  
till he has  
his head  
der his fe  
and the o  
is to pay  
personage  
his foot,  
and upper  
rising up  
that his  
sious of  
ed by th  
would fre  
marks of  
was on th



ceeded these islanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occasion, in ready and submissive compliance with the commands of their chiefs, and in the perfect harmony that subsists among all ranks. Such a behaviour manifests itself in a remarkable manner whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them assembled together, which frequently happens. The greatest attention and most profound silence are observed during the harangue; and whatever might have been the purport of the oration, we never saw a single instance, when any one of those who were present showed signs of his being displeased, or seemed in the least inclined to dispute the declared will of the speaker.

It is a peculiar privilege annexed to the person of the king, not to be punctured, nor circumcised, or rather supercised, as all his subjects are. Whenever he walks out, all who meet him must sit down till he has passed. No person is suffered to be over his head; but, on the contrary, all must come under his feet. The method of doing homage to him and the other chiefs, is as follows: the person who is to pay obeisance squats down before the great personage, and bows the head down to the sole of his foot, which he taps or touches with the under and upper side of the fingers of each hand; then rising up, he retires. We had reason to think, that his majesty cannot refuse any one who is desirous of paying him this homage, which is called by the natives *moe moea*; for the people would frequently think proper to show him those marks of submission when he was walking; and he was on those occasions obliged to stop, and hold up



one of his feet behind him, till they had performed this respectful ceremony. This, to so corpulent and unwieldy a man as Poulaho, must have been painful and troublesome; and we have sometimes seen him endeavour, by running, to get out of the way, or to reach a convenient place for sitting down. The hands, after having been thus applied, become, in some cases, useless for a little time; for, till they are washed, they must not touch food of any sort. This prohibition, in a country where water is far from being plentiful, would be attended with inconvenience, if a piece of any juicy plant, which they can immediately procure, being rubbed over the hands, did not serve for the purpose of purification. When the hands are in this situation, they term it *taboo rema*; the former word generally signifying forbidden, and the latter implying hand. When the *taboo* is incurred, by doing homage to a person of rank, it may thus easily be washed off: but, in several other cases, it must continue for a certain period. We have often seen women, who have been *taboo rema*, not fed by themselves, but by others. The interdicted person, after the limited time has elapsed, washes herself in one of their baths, which are, in general dirty ponds of brackish water. She then waits upon the sovereign, and, after having paid the customary obeisance, takes hold of his foot, which she applies to her shoulders, breast, and other parts: he then embraces her on both shoulders, and she immediately retires, purified from her uncleanness. If it be always necessary to have recourse to his majesty for this purpose (of which we are not certain, though Omai assured us it was,) it may be one reason for his travelling very frequently from one island to another.

T  
tion.  
and  
eater  
infor  
belon  
in co  
inhal  
his m  
signe  
Took  
did n  
tellig  
of al  
each  
and c  
be ea  
effect  
groun  
articl  
W  
island  
at wh  
of go  
subje  
forme  
One  
mesti  
cipal  
They  
by th  
a sed  
of th  
office

The word *taboo* has a great latitude of signification. They call human sacrifices *tangata taboo*; and when any particular thing is prohibited to be eaten, or made use of, they say it is *taboo*. They informed us, that, if the king should go into a house belonging to one of his subjects, that house would in consequence become *taboo*, and could never be inhabited by the owner of it; so that, wherever his majesty travels, there are houses peculiarly assigned for his accomodation. At this time, old Toobou presided over the *taboo*; that is (if Omai did not misunderstand those who gave him the intelligence,) he and his deputies had the inspection of all the produce of the island, taking care that each individual should cultivate and plant his quota, and directing what should, and what should not, be eaten. By so prudent a regulation, they take effectual precautions against a famine; sufficient ground is employed in raising provisions; and every article is secured from unnecessary consumption.

When we take into consideration the number of islands of which this state consists, and the distance at which some of them are removed from the seat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of subjection might be apprehended. But they informed us, that this circumstance never happens. One reason of their not being thus embroiled in domestic commotions may be this; that all their principal chiefs take up their residence at Tongataboo. They also secure the dependence of the other isles, by the decisive celerity of their operations; for if a seditious and popular man should start up in any of them, Teenou, or whoever happens to hold his office, is immediately dispatched thither to put him

to death; by which means they extinguish an insurrection while it is yet in embryo.

The different classes of their chiefs seemed to be nearly as numerous as among us; but there are few, comparatively speaking, that are lords of extensive districts of territory. It is said, that when a person of property dies, all his possessions devolve on the sovereign; but that it is customary to give them to the eldest son of the deceased, with this condition annexed, that he should provide out of the estate for the other children. The crown is hereditary; and we know, from a particular circumstance, that the Futafaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned in a direct line, for the space of at least one hundred and thirty-five years, which have elapsed between our present visit to these islands, and Tasman's discovery of them. Upon our inquiring of them, whether any traditional account of the arrival of Tasman's ships had been preserved among them till this time, we found that this history had been delivered down to them from their ancestors with great accuracy: for they said that his two ships resembled ours, and also mentioned the place where they had lain at anchor, their having continued but a few days, and their quitting that station to go to Annamooka; and, for the purpose of informing us how long ago this affair had happened, they communicated to us the name of the Futafaihe who reigned at that time, and those who had succeeded him in the sovereignty, down to Poulaho, who is the fifth monarch since that period.

It might naturally be imagined, that the present sovereign of the Friendly Isles had the highest

rank  
found  
has b  
super  
Thes  
title  
we r  
forme  
behin  
himse  
son a  
sons,  
than  
reason  
witho  
ters,  
other  
toolib  
goula  
havin  
June.  
men  
Midd  
tity o  
and  
honou  
joyed  
Th  
sembl  
and t  
people  
both  
stand  
very

rank of any person in his dominions. But we found it to be otherwise ; for Latoolibooloo, who has been already mentioned, and three women, are superior, in some respects, to Poulaho himself. These great personages are distinguished by the title of *Tammaba*, which implies a chief. When we made inquiry concerning them, we were informed that the late king, father of Poulaho, left behind him a sister of equal rank, and older than himself ; that she, by a native of Feejee, had a son and two daughters ; and that these three persons, as well as their mother, are of higher rank than the king. We endeavoured to discover the reason of this pre-eminence of the *Tammabas*, but without effect. The mother, and one of her daughters, named Tooeela-kaipa, reside at Vavao. The other daughter, called Mongoula-kaipa, and Latoolibooloo the son, dwell at Tongataboo. Mongoula-kaipa is the lady who has been mentioned as having dined with captain Cook on the 21st of June. Latoolibooloo was supposed by his countrymen to be disordered in his senses. At Eooa, or Middleburg, they showed us a considerable quantity of land, which was said to be his property ; and we saw there a son of his, a child, who was honoured with the same title that his father enjoyed.

The language of these islands bear a striking resemblance to that of New-Zealand, of Otaheite, and the Society Isles. The pronunciation of these people differs, indeed, in many instances, from that both of Otaheite and New-Zealand ; but, notwithstanding that, a great number of words are either very little changed, or exactly the same. The lan-



guage, as spoken by the Friendly Islanders, is sufficiently copious to express all their ideas; and, besides being tolerably harmonious in common conversation, is easily adapted to the purposes of music. They have terms to signify numbers as far as a hundred thousand, beyond which they either would not, or could not reckon.

The latitude of that part of Tongataboo where our observatory was erected, which was near the middle of the north side of the island, was according to the most accurate observations,  $21^{\circ} 8' 19''$  south; and its longitude was  $184^{\circ} 55' 18''$  east.

The tides are more considerable at the Friendly Islands than at any other of captain Cook's discoveries in this ocean, that are situate within either of the tropics. At Annamooka the tide rises and falls about six feet, upon a perpendicular. At Tongataboo, it rises and falls four feet and three quarters, on the full and change days; and three feet and a half at the quadratures.

Island  
rec  
ter  
vic  
im  
—  
Re  
dr  
dy  
be  
—  
ca

W  
at ei  
east  
blew  
till a



A  
V O Y A G E  
TO THE  
PACIFIC OCEAN.

---

BOOK. III.

CONTENTS.

Island of Toobouai discovered—Arrival at Otaheite—Omai's reception—Otaheite visited by the Spaniards—Their attempts to depreciate the character of the English—Interview with Waheiadqoa, the chief of Tiaraboo—Omai's imprudent conduct—Poultry and cattle left on the Island—Captain Cook admitted into a council of the chiefs—Reflections on a human sacrifice—Heevas described—Girls dressed to bring a present—Manner of preserving the body of a dead chief—Riding on horseback—Mock fight between two war canoes—Manner of conducting a war—A curious medical operation—Otoo's art—Omai's war canoe—Naval power, &c.

**W**E had now taken our final leave of the Friendly islands. On the 17th of July, at eight o'clock in the evening, Eooa bore north-east by north, distant 3 or 4 leagues. The wind blew a fresh gale at east. We stood to the south, till after six o'clock the next morning, when, from

the same direction, a sudden squall took our ship aback; and before we could trim the ships on the other tack, the main-sail and the top-gallant sails were considerably torn.

On the 19th and 20th the wind kept between the southwest, and southeast; then it veered to the east, northeast, and north.

We stretched to the east-southeast, without meeting with any thing remarkable, till the 29th, at seven o'clock in the evening, when we had a very heavy squall of wind from the north. We were, at this time, under single-reefed top-sails, courses, and stay-sails. Two of the latter were almost demolished by the wind; and it was with the utmost difficulty that we saved the other sails. This squall being over, we saw several lights moving on board the *Discovery*; whence we conjectured that something had given way; and, the next morning, we perceived that her main-top-mast had been lost. Both wind and weather remained very unsettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former settled in the northwest quarter. Our latitude was now  $28^{\circ} 6'$  south, and our longitude was  $193^{\circ} 23'$  east. We saw some pintado birds, which were the first we had seen, since we left the land.

At noon, on the 31st, captain Clerke made a signal to speak with captain Cook; and afterwards informed him, that the head of the main-mast had sprung, and in such a manner as to render the rigging of another top-mast extremely dangerous; that he must therefore rig something lighter in its place. He further informed him, that he had lost his main-top-gallant-yard; and had not another on board, nor a spar to make one. Captain Cook sent

him the  
supplie  
by ge  
mizer  
the R

We  
out m  
the mo  
when  
about  
peared  
approa  
formed  
rectly  
in the  
north-r

At  
the nor  
round  
reef of  
least a  
upon it  
or run  
coast, a  
ed the  
launch  
who pa

In o  
withus  
ed sail,  
reef, w  
The ca  
shot of  
desired

him the Resolution's sprit-sail-top-sail-yard, which supplied this want for the present. The next day, by getting up a jury-top-mast, on which he set a mizen-top-sail, he was enabled to keep way with the Resolution.

We steared east-northeast, and northeast, without meeting with any remarkable occurrence till the morning of the 8th of August, at eleven o'clock, when land was observed bearing north-northeast, about nine or ten leagues distant. At first it appeared like so many separate islands; but, as we approached, we found it was all connected, and formed one and the same island. We steered directly for it with a fine gale, and, at half past six in the afternoon, it extended from north by east, to north-northeast, distant three or four leagues.

At day break, the next morning, we steered for the northwest side of the island, and as we stood round its southwest part, we saw it guarded by a reef of coral rock, extending, in some places, at least a mile from the land, and a high surf breaking upon it. As we drew near, we saw people walking or running along shore, on several parts of the coast, and, in a short time after, when we had reached the lee-side of the island, we saw two canoes launched, in which were about a dozen of men, who paddled towards us.

In order to give these canoes time to come up with us, as well as to sound for anchorage, we shortened sail, and at the distance of half a mile from the reef, we found from forty to thirty-five fathoms water. The canoes, after having advanced within pistol-shot of the ships, suddenly stopped. Omai was desired, as was usual on such occasions, to endea-

your to prevail upon the men in them to come nearer; but no arguments could induce them to trust themselves within our reach. They often pointed eagerly to the shore with their paddles, at the same time calling to us to go thither; and many of their people who were standing upon the beach, held up something white in their hands, which we construed as an invitation for us to come to land. We could easily have accomplished this, there being good anchorage without the reef, and an opening in it, through which the canoes had passed, which had no surf upon it. But the captain did not choose to risk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an island that appeared to be but of little consequence. We required no refreshments, if we had been certain of meeting with them there, and therefore, after making several unsuccessful attempts to prevail upon these people to come near us, we made sail to the north, and left them; having first learned that the name of their island was Toobouai. It is situate in the latitude of  $23^{\circ} 25'$  south; and in  $210^{\circ} 37'$  east longitude.

The greatest extent of this island, in any direction, is not above five or six miles. Small, however, as it appears, there are hills in it of a considerable elevation; at the foot of which is a narrow border of flat land, extending almost all round it, bordered with a white sand-beach. The hills were covered with herbage, except a few rocky cliffs, with patches of trees interspersed to their summits. This island, as we were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully stocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the several kinds of fruits and roots

that  
neigh

Fr  
came  
Toob  
table  
whom  
colou  
was s  
ders,  
crown  
full,  
expres  
vering  
the w  
some  
were c  
sitors  
with p  
ing a  
two f  
withou  
into a  
blowing  
not say  
peace.

The  
thirty  
surface  
part p  
height  
and, li  
all ove  
with f



that are to be met with at the other islands in this neighbourhood.

From the conversation we had with those who came off to us, we discovered that the inhabitants of Toobouai speak the Otaheite language : an indubitable proof that they are of the same nation. Those whom we saw in the canoes were a stout copper-coloured people ; some wearing their hair (which was straight and black) flowing about the shoulders, and others having it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. Their faces were roundish and full, but the features flat ; and their countenances expressed a degree of natural ferocity. Their covering was a piece of narrow stuff wrapped round the waist, and passing between the thighs ; but some of those whom we beheld upon the beach were completely clothed in white. Some of our visitors in the canoes had their necks ornamented with pearl shells ; and one of them continued blowing a large conch-shell, to which a reed of about two feet long was fixed ; he began in a long tone, without any variation ; and afterwards converted it into a kind of musical instrument. Whether the blowing of the conch portended any thing, we cannot say, but we never found it the messenger of peace.

The length of their canoes appeared to be about thirty feet, and they rose about two feet above the surface of the water, as they floated. The fore-part projected a little ; the after-part rose to the height of two or three feet, with a gradual curve, and, like the upper part of the sides, was carved all over. The rest of the sides were ornamented with flat white shells curiously disposed. There



were eight men in one of the canoes, and seven in the other. They were conducted with small paddles, whose blades were almost circular : and they sometimes paddled with the two opposite sides so close together, that they appeared to be but one boat; the rowers occasionally turning their faces to the stern, and pulling that way, without paddling the canoes round. Seeing we were determined to leave them, they stood up and repeated something aloud; but we knew not whether they were expressing their enmity or friendship. It is certain, however, that they had not any weapons with them; nor could we with our glasses discover that those on shore were armed.

Leaving the island, we steered to the north with a fresh gale, and at day-break on the 12th, we perceived the island of Maitea. Otaheite appeared soon after; the point of Oheitepeha Bay bearing west, about four leagues distant. We steered for this bay, intending to anchor there, in order to draw some refreshments from the southeast part of the island, before we proceeded to Matavai, where we expected our principal supply. We had a fresh gale till two o'clock in the afternoon; when, at about a league from the bay, the wind suddenly died away. About two hours after we had sudden squalls with rain from the east. About nine o'clock we were obliged to stand out and spend the night at sea.

When we came near the island, several canoes came off to the ship, each conducted by two or three men. But, as they were common fellows, Omai took no particular notice of them, nor they of him. They did not even seem to perceive that

he was  
versed  
whom  
Omai's  
this cor  
persons,  
barked  
there wa  
meeting  
perfect i  
taken hi  
drawer  
him a fe  
the rest  
fairs was  
hardly s  
they mig  
Omai acc  
a present  
return, s  
to every  
his prope  
shown to  
is the co  
island, I  
bestowed  
Omai's fi  
own, I ne  
still I was  
cents, wit  
England  
raising hi  
respected,  
throughout

he was one of their countrymen, altho' they conversed with him for some time. At length a chief, whom I had known before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who chanced to be now at this corner of the island, and three or four more persons, all of whom knew Omai before he embarked with captain Furneaux, came on board. Yet there was nothing either tender or striking in their meeting. On the contrary, there seemed to be a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, having taken his brother down into the cabin, opened the drawer where he kept his red feathers, and gave him a few. This being presently known amongst the rest of the natives upon deck, the face of affairs was entirely turned, and Ootee, who would hardly speak to Omai before, now begged that they might be *tayos* (friends) and exchange names. Omai accepted the honour, and confirmed it with a present of red feathers; and Ootee, by way of return, sent ashore for a hog. But it was evident to every one of us, that it was not the man, but his property they were in love with. Had he not shown to them his treasure of red feathers, which is the commodity in greatest estimation at the island, I question much whether they would have bestowed even a cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omai's first reception among his countrymen. I own, I never expected it would be otherwise; but still I was in hopes, that the valuable cargo of presents, with which the liberality of his friends in England had loaded him, would be the means of raising him into consequence, and of making him respected, and even courted, by the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands.

This could not but have happened, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence. But, instead of it, I am sorry to say, that he paid too little regard to the repeated advice of those who wished him well, and suffered himself to be duped by every designing knave.

The important news of red feathers being on board our ships, having been conveyed on shore by Omai's friends, day had no sooner begun to break next morning, than we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, crowded with people bringing hogs and fruit to market. At first, a quantity of feathers, not greater than what might be got from a tom-tit, would purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight. But, as almost every body in the ships was possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it fell in its value above six hundred *per cent.* before night. However, even then, the balance was much in our favour; and red feathers continued to preserve their superiority over every other commodity. Some of the natives would not part with a hog, unless they received an axe in exchange; but nails, beads, and other trinkets, which, during our former voyage, had so great a run at this island, were now so much despised, that few would deign to look at them.

In the morning of the 13th, captain Cook came to anchor in a bay called Oheitepeha. Soon after, Omai's sister came on board to see him; and the captain was happy to observe, that, much to the honour of each, their meeting was marked with expressions of the most tender affection. After this moving scene, Omai and the captain went ashore. Here the attention of the former was soon drawn

to an  
was al  
tifully  
the old  
order t  
erected  
found C  
it was v  
accomp  
it seem  
nish shi  
ha Bay  
left som  
shore.  
house, a  
away fo  
the sam  
islander  
ter a sh  
but left  
a small  
material  
have bee  
sionally  
divided  
one wer  
hats, an  
to be ve  
had suff  
ing bee  
round, v  
were als  
it shoul

to an old woman, the sister of his mother. She was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. The captain left him with the old lady, encircled by a number of people, in order to go and take a view of a house and cross erected by the Spaniards. When he returned, he found Omai holding forth to a large company; and it was with some difficulty he could be got away to accompany the captain on board. Captain Cook, it seems, had found from the natives, that two Spanish ships from Lima had twice put into Oheitepeha Bay, since his last visit in 1774. They had left some hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and a ram on shore. The first time they came they built a house, and left four men behind them, carrying away four of the natives. In about ten months the same ships returned, bringing back two of the islanders, the other two having died at Lima. After a short stay they took away their own people, but left the house standing. This was situate at a small distance from the beach. The wooden materials of which it was composed, seemed to have been brought, ready prepared, to set up occasionally; for all the planks were numbered. It was divided into two small rooms; and, in the inner one were a bench, a table, a bedstead, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be very careful, as also of the house itself, which had suffered no hurt from the weather, a shed having been built over it. There were scuttles all round, which served as air-holes; and perhaps they were also meant to fire from with musquets, if ever it should be found necessary. At some distance



stood a wooden cross, on the transverse part of which was cut

CHRISTUS VINCIT.

And on the perpendicular part was

CAROLUS III. IMPERAT. 1774.

On the other side of the post captain Cook took care to preserve the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing

GEORGIUS TERTIUS REX,

Annis 1767,

1769, 1773, 1774, & 1777.

Near the foot of this cross was the grave of the commodore of the two ships who died here, while they lay in the bay the first time. The Spaniards seemed to have taken great pains to ingratiate themselves with the inhabitants, who, on every occasion, mentioned them with the strongest expressions of esteem and veneration. The former, however, did not succeed in their attempts to depreciate the character of the English. One of the four persons whom they left behind, and whom the natives called Mateema, made himself very popular. He took uncommon pains to study their language, that he might be enabled to impress their minds with the most exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish monarchy, and make them think meanly of the English. He even went so far as to assure them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation; that *Pretane* was only a small island which they (the Spaniards) had entirely destroyed; and that as for captain Cook, they had met with him at sea, and with a few shot had sent his ship with every soul in her to the bottom. All this, and many other improbable falsehoods, did the Spaniards

make to  
other v  
the Eng  
home;  
(which,  
sidered  
ma had

Wah  
the nam  
sent. H  
tify his  
visit him  
though  
captain  
but his b  
succeede  
about tw  
the tutor  
brated q  
Omai an  
mal visi  
some of  
English  
Tongata  
earth; b  
possessed  
interview  
Cook rec  
ted the i  
him to e  
again, f  
the perso  
with this  
far from



make this people believe. But if Spain had no other views in this expedition than to depreciate the English, she had better have kept her ships at home; for captain Cook's return to the island (which, of course, was quite unexpected) was considered as a complete refutation of all that Mateema had said.

Waheiaadooda, sovereign of Tiaraboo, (which was the name of this part of the island) was now absent. However, he soon after sent a message to notify his arrival, and to desire that the captain would visit him ashore. This was not the same person, though of the same name, with the chief, whom captain Cook had seen here during his last voyage; but his brother, a boy about ten years old, who had succeeded on the death of the elder Waheiaadooda, about twenty months before, and was now under the tutorage of a chief named Etoorea. The celebrated queen Oberea was dead. Accordingly, Omai and the captain prepared to make him a formal visit. On this occasion, Omai, assisted by some of his friends, dressed himself; not after the English fashion, nor that of Otahete, nor that of Tongataboo, nor in the dress of any country upon earth; but in a strange medley of all that he was possessed of. There was nothing remarkable in this interview, except the information which captain Cook received, that the Spaniards, when they visited the island, had desired the chiefs not to suffer him to enter Oheitepeha Bay, if he should return again, for that the island belonged to them. But the person, says captain Cook, who addressed me with this information, assured me that they were so far from paying any regard to this request, that he

was authorised now to make a formal surrender of the province of Tiaraboo to me, and of every thing in it; which marks very plainly, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. At length the young chief was directed by his attendants to come and embrace me; and, by way of confirming this treaty of friendship, we exchanged names. The ceremony being closed, he and his friends accompanied me on board to dinner.

Omai had prepared a *maro*, composed of red and yellow feathers, which he intended for Otoo, the king of the whole island, and, considering where we were, it was a present of very great value. I said all that I could to persuade him not to produce it now, wishing him to keep it on board till an opportunity should offer of presenting it to Otoo with his own hands. But he had too good an opinion of the honesty and fidelity of his countrymen to take my advice. Nothing would serve him but to carry it ashore on this occasion, and to give it to Waheiadooa, to be by him forwarded to Otoo, in order to its being added to the royal *maro*. He thought by this management that he should oblige both chiefs; whereas he highly disobliged the one, whose favour was of the most consequence to him, without gaining any reward from the other. What I had foreseen happened; for Waheiadooa kept the *maro* himself, and only sent to Otoo a very small piece of feathers; not the twentieth part of what belonged to the magnificent present.

On the 19th, captain Cook received from the young chief a present of ten or a dozen of hogs, some cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the even-

ing,  
pleas

So  
ed,  
The  
seen,  
place  
two  
perm  
imag  
ty to  
pet h

was  
paliss  
resen  
large  
and n  
tufol  
the l  
cuou  
bably  
This  
to ou  
imag  
creat  
had v  
upon  
its be  
roots  
piece  
sited  
paliss  
enter

ing, we exhibited some fire-works, which both pleased and astonished the numerous spectators.

Some of our gentlemen, in their walks, discovered, as they thought, a Roman Catholic chapel. They described the altar which they said they had seen, and every other constituent part of such a place of worship. They mentioned, however, that two persons, who had the care of it, would not permit them to go in; on which account the captain imagined they were mistaken, and had the curiosity to pay a visit to it himself. The supposed chapel happened to be a *toopapao*, in which the body of the late Waheia-dooa lay in a kind of state. It was in a pretty large house, inclosed with a low palisade. The *toopapao* was remarkably neat, and resembled one of those little awnings over their large canoes. It was hung and covered with cloths and mats of a variety of colours, which had a beautiful effect. One piece of scarlet broad cloth of the length of four or five yards, appeared conspicuous among the other ornaments; which had probably been received as a present from the Spaniards. This cloth, and some tassels of feathers, suggested to our gentlemen the idea of a chapel; and their imagination supplied whatever else was wanting to create a resemblance: hearing that the Spaniards had visited this place, might operate on their minds upon this occasion, and add to the probability of its being a chapel. Small offerings of fruits and roots seemed to be daily made at this shrine, some pieces being now quite fresh. These were deposited on a kind of altar, which stood without the palisades; within which we were not permitted to enter. Two men constantly attended here, both

night and day ; as well to watch over the place, as to dress and undress the *toopapaoo*. When captain Cook went to survey it, the cloth and its appendages were rolled up ; but, at his request, the two attendants placed it in order, but not till after they had dressed themselves in clean white robes. The chief, we were informed, had been dead about twenty months.

Having provided a fresh supply of water, and finished all our necessary operations, on the 22d we brought off our animals from shore, and made ready for sea. While the ships were unmooring, Omai and captain Cook landed, on the morning of the 23d, to take leave of the young chief. While they were with him, one of those persons, whom they call *Eatoos*, from a persuasion that they possess the spirit of the divinity, presented himself before them. He had all the appearances of insanity about him, and his only covering was a quantity of plantain leaves wrapped round his waist. He uttered what he had to say in a low, squeaking voice, so as hardly to be understood. But Omai said he perfectly comprehended him, and that he was advising Waheiadooa not to accompany captain Cook to Matavai, an expedition which he had never known that he intended, nor had the captain ever made such a proposal to him. The *Eatooa* also predicted, that the ships would not arrive that day at Matavai. In this, however, he was mistaken ; though appearances, at that time, favoured his assertion, as there was not a single breath of wind in any direction. While he was delivering his prophecy, a heavy shower of rain came on, which occasioned all to run for shelter, except himself, who

appeared  
about ha  
tion bein  
the nativ

Captan  
an *Earee*  
was, that  
And yet  
tice taken  
governs  
such pers  
*Eatooa*.  
cerning t  
which the  
if any on  
then give  
friends d  
when he  
remembra  
the fit wa

Soon  
breeze sp  
the Resol  
tavai Bay  
the next m  
cy was ha  
On the  
Bay of  
in Matav  
whence he  
and Omai  
the king  
tain, had  
dressing h



appeared to disregard it. He continued squeaking about half an hour, and then retired. No attention being paid to what he uttered, though some of the natives laughed at him.

Captain Cook asked the chief, whether he was an *Earee* or a *Towtow*? The answer he received was, that he was *taata eno*, that is, a bad man. And yet, notwithstanding this, and the little notice taken of the mad prophet, superstition so far governs the natives, that they absolutely believe such persons to be possessed with the spirit of the *Eatooa*. Omai seemed to be well instructed concerning them. He said, that during the fits with which they are seized, they know nobody, and that if any one of them is a man of property, he will then give away every moveable he possesses, if his friends do not put them out of his reach; and, when he recovers, he seems not to have the least remembrance of what he had done during the time the fit was upon him.

Soon after the captain got on board, a light breeze springing up at east, we got under sail, and the *Resolution* anchored the same evening at Matavai Bay; but the *Discovery* did not get in till the next morning; consequently the man's prophecy was half fulfilled.

On the 24th of August, captain Cook left the Bay of Oheitepeha, and in the evening anchored in Matavai Bay, in another part of the island, whence he expected his principal supply. Here he and Omai had an interview on shore with Otoo, the king of the whole island. Omai, says the captain, had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his very best clothes, and he



haved with a great deal of respect and modesty. Nevertheless, very little notice was taken of him. Perhaps envy had some share in producing this cold reception. He made the chief a present of a large piece of red feathers, and about two or three yards of gold cloth; and I gave him a suit of fine linen and a gold-laced hat, some tools, and, what was of more value than all the other articles, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets in use at the Friendly Islands.

After the hurry of this visit was over, the king and the whole royal family accompanied me on board, followed by several canoes, laden with all kinds of provisions, in quantity sufficient to have served the companies of both ships for a week. Each of the family owned, or pretended to own a part; so that I had a present from every one of them; and every one of them had a separate present in return from me; which was the great object in view. Soon after, the king's mother, who had not been present at the first interview, came on board bringing with her a quantity of provisions and cloth, which she divided between me and Omai. For, although he was but little noticed at first by his countrymen, they no sooner gained the knowledge of his riches, than they began to court his friendship. I encouraged this as much as I could; for it was my wish to fix him with Otoo. As I intended to leave all my European animals at this island, I thought he would be able to give some instruction about the management of them, and about their use. Besides, I knew and saw, that the farther he was from his native island, he would be the better respected. But, unfortunate-

ly, poor himself is the friend of note and vagabond plunder would not rying from him the i that they ships, such the lowest

Captain poultry, They com cock and and four the posses began to found a same that years before which late Cook had cows ashore from Lim bull; and with the at Matava with seven the native potatoes, way of su also plant

ly, poor Omai rejected my advice, and conducted himself in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of every other person of note in Otaheite. He associated with none but vagabonds and strangers, whose sole views were to plunder him. And, if I had not interfered, they would not have left him a single article worth carrying from the island. This necessarily drew upon him the ill-will of the principal chiefs; who found that they could not procure, from any one in the ships, such valuable presents as Omai bestowed on the lowest of the people his companions.

Captain Cook was next engaged in landing the poultry, with which he was to stock the island. They consisted of a peacock and hen, a turkey-cock and hen, a gander and three geese, a drake and four ducks. All these he left at Oparre, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and ducks began to breed before he sailed. At Oparre he found a gander, which the natives said was the same that captain Wallis had given Oberea ten years before; several goats; and the Spanish bull; which latter could have been of no use, if captain Cook had not arrived; as the Spaniards had left no cows ashore. Probably they died in their passage from Lima. Captain Cook sent three cows to this bull; and the bull which he himself had brought, with the horse and mare, and sheep, he put ashore at Matavai. He likewise planted a piece of ground with several articles, very few of which he believed the natives would ever look after. Some melons, potatoes, and two pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding, before he left the place. He also planted several shaddock trees, which he had

brought from the Friendly Islands. These, he thought, could hardly fail of success, unless their growth should be impeded by the same premature curiosity which destroyed a vine planted by the Spaniards at Obeitepeha. A number of the natives got together, to taste the first fruit it bore ; but, as the grapes were still sour, they considered it as little better than poison, and it was unanimously determined to tread it under foot. In that state Onai found it by chance, and was overjoyed at the discovery : for he had a full confidence, that if he had but grapes he could easily make wine. Accordingly, he had several slips cut off from the tree, to carry away with him ; and the remainder of it was pruned and put in order. Perhaps, becoming wise by Onai's instructions, they may now suffer the fruit to grow to perfection, and not pass so hasty a sentence upon it again. As captain Cook intended to continue here a considerable time, we set up our two observatories on Matavai Point ; and, adjoining to them, two tents were pitched for the reception of a guard, and of such people as might be left on shore, in different departments. The command at this station was intrusted to Mr King, who also attended the astronomical and other observations. While we remained here, the crews of both ships were occupied in many necessary operations. The Discovery's main-mast was carried ashore, and made as good as it had ever been before. Our sails and water-casks were repaired ; both our ships were caulked ; and the rigging was completely over-hauled. We likewise inspected the bread that we had on board in casks, and found that but little of it was damaged.

At N  
with al  
in his  
there,  
carried  
not to  
rest of  
Spanish  
were, s  
duced to  
him as v

We  
young  
real nam  
Ulietea  
after he  
land, Ea  
board my  
seven mi  
good bre  
and yer,  
ly repeat  
Heetehe  
lived in  
no other  
gratify  
volurite/p  
jects of t  
It was  
modes, a  
For, tho  
Admiral  
use (to v  
other art

At Matavai captain Cook renewed his intercourse with all his old friends, whose names are recorded in his account of his second voyage; and, while there, one of the natives, whom the Spaniards had carried with them to Lima, paid him a visit. Tho' not to be distinguished, in appearance, from the rest of his countrymen, he had not forgot some Spanish words. Among them the most frequent were, *si Sennor*; and, when a stranger was introduced to him, he did not fail to rise up and accost him as well as he could.

We also found here, says captain Cook, the young man whom we called Oedidee, but whose real name is Heeteheete. I had carried him from Ulietea in 1773, and brought him back in 1774; after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New Zealand, Easterland, and the Marqueses, and been on board my ship, in that extensive navigation, about seven months. He was, at least, as tenacious of his good breeding, as the man who had been at Lima; and yes, *Sir*, or *if you please*, *Sir*, were as frequently repeated by him as *si Sennor* was by the other. Heeteheete, who is a native of Bolabola, had arrived in Otahete about three months before, with no other intention, that we could learn, than to gratify his curiosity, or, perhaps, some other favourite passion; which are very often the only objects of the pursuit of other travelling gentlemen. It was evident, however, that he preferred the modes, and even garb, of his countrymen to ours. For, though I gave him some clothes, which our Admiralty Board had been pleased to send for his use (to which I added a chest of tools, and a few other articles, as a present from myself), he declin-



ed wearing them after a few days. This instance, and that of the person who had been at Lima, may be urged as a proof of the strong propensity natural to man, of returning to habits acquired at an early age, and only interrupted by accident. And, perhaps, it may be concluded, that even Omai, who had imbibed almost the whole English manners, will, in a very short time after our leaving him, like Oedidee, and the visitor of Lima, return to his own native garments.

In the morning of the 27th, a man from Oheitepeha informed us, that two Spanish ships had anchored in that bay the preceding night; and to confirm this intelligence, he produced some coarse blue cloth, which, he said, he had got out of one of the ships. He further said, that Mateema was in one of the ships; and that they would come to Mataval in two or three days. These, and some other circumstances which he mentioned, gave the story so much the appearance of truth, that the commodore dispatched lieutenant Williamson in a boat to look into Oheitepeha Bay; and, in the mean time, both our ships were put in a posture of defence. For, tho' England and Spain were at peace when he left England, he did not know but that a different scene might by this time have opened. Upon inquiry, however, we had reason to imagine, that the relater of the story had imposed upon us; and this was put beyond all doubt, when Mr Williamson returned the day following, who made his report to captain Cook, that he had been at Oheitepeha, and found that no ships were there at present, nor had any been there since we left it. The people of this part of the island, where we now were stationed,

told us,  
ed by  
could  
posed th  
island,  
heite-no  
reap fro  
the two  
to each  
weather  
which d  
the sun  
er. Th  
were als  
ning of  
retreat,  
board th  
from the  
mitted,  
account.  
the who  
had mad  
curiositi  
for the p  
prudent  
fellow to  
valuable  
den fligh  
mily had  
captain s  
space of  
ed to ta  
hatchets,  
more up



told us, indeed, at first, that it was a fiction invented by those of Tiaraboo. But what view they could have we could not conceive, unless they supposed that the report would induce us to quit the island, and thus deprive the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe of the advantages they might otherwise reap from our ships remaining there; the natives of the two parts of the island being inveterate enemies to each other. Since we arrived at Matavai, the weather had been unsettled till the 20th; before which day we were unable to get equal altitudes of the sun for ascertaining the going of the time-keeper. The caulking, and other repairs of the ships, were also retarded by the same cause. In the evening of this day, the islanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land station and from on board the ships. We conjectured that this arose from their knowing that some theft had been committed, and apprehending punishment upon that account. At length we became acquainted with the whole affair. One of the surgeon's mates had made an excursion into the country to purchase curiosities, and had taken with him four hatchets for the purpose of exchange. Having been so imprudent as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with so valuable a prize. This was the reason of the sudden flight, in which Otoo himself and all his family had joined; and it was with difficulty that the captain stopped them, after following them for the space of two or three miles. As he had determined to take no measures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people for the future might be more upon their guard against such negligence,

every thing quickly resumed its former tranquillity.

The next morning, some messengers arrived from Eimeo, with intelligence, that the people of that island were in arms; and that Otoo's partizans there had been obliged by the opposite party to retreat to the mountains. The quarrel between the two islands, which began in 1774, had partly subsisted ever since. A formidable armament had sailed soon after captain Cook left Otaheite in his last voyage; but the malecontents of Eimeo had made so gallant a resistance, that the fleet had returned without success; and now another expedition was deemed necessary. On the arrival of these messengers, the chiefs assembled at Otoo's house, where the captain actually was at that time, and had the honour of being admitted into their council. One of the messengers opened the business with a speech of considerable length, the purport of which was to explain the situation of affairs in Eimeo, and to excite the Otaheitean chiefs to arm on the occasion. This opinion was opposed by others who were against commencing hostilities; and the debate was, for some time, carried on with great order and decorum. At length, however, they became very tumultuous, and the captain began to expect that their meeting would conclude like a Polish diet. But the contending chiefs cooled as fast as they grew warm, and order was speedily restored. In the end, the party for war prevailed; and it was resolved, though not unanimously, that a strong force should be sent to Eimeo. Otoo said very little during the whole debate. Those of the council, who were inclinable for war, applied to the

captain  
desirou  
Omai  
could n  
cessity  
as he c  
ed with  
had nev  
could n  
them.  
appeare  
solved;  
ed him  
Omai w  
A pa  
e app  
racter,  
was aga  
desirous  
the old  
any suc  
on hosti  
war, w  
brother  
Eimeo,  
of that  
been th  
caused h  
in oppos  
ceased,  
haps had  
to succe  
other.

captain for his assistance ; and all of them were desirous of knowing what part he would take. Omai was sent for to act as interpreter ; but, as he could not be found, the captain being under the necessity of speaking for himself, told them, as well as he could, that as he was not perfectly acquainted with the dispute, and as the natives of Eimeo, had never given him the least cause of offence, he could not think of engaging in hostilities against them. With this declaration, they either were, or appeared to be satisfied. The council was then dissolved ; but before the captain retired, Otoo desired him to come again in the afternoon, and bring Omai with him.

A party of us accordingly waited upon him at the appointed time ; and he conducted us to his chamber, in whose presence the dispute with Eimeo was again discussed. The commodore being very desirous of effecting an accommodation, sounded the old chief on that subject ; but he was deaf to any such proposal, and fully determined to carry on hostilities. On our inquiring into the cause of the war, we were informed, that several years ago, a brother of Waheiadooa of Tiaraboo was sent to Eimeo, at the desire of Maheine, a popular chief of that island, to be their king ; but he had not been there many days, before Maheine, having caused him to be put to death, set up for himself, in opposition to Tierataboonooe, nephew of the deceased, who now became the lawful heir, or perhaps had been appointed, by the people of Otaheite, to succeed to the government on the death of the other.

Towha, who is related to Otoo, and chief of the district of Tettaha, and who had been commander in chief of the armament sent against Eimeo in 1774, happened not to be at Matavai at this time, and therefore, was not present at these consultations. It appeared, however, that he was no stranger to what was transacted; and that he entered into the affair with great eagerness and spirit. For, on the 1st of September, a messenger arrived from him to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man to be sacrificed to the *Eatooa*, with the view of imploring the assistance of the deity against Eimeo. This ceremony was to be performed at the great *morai*, at Attahooroo; and Otoo's presence was necessary on the occasion. Captain Cook was desirous of being present at this solemnity, and therefore proposed to Otoo, that he might be permitted to accompany him. To this the king readily consented; and they immediately set out in the captain's boat, with his old friend Potatou, Mr Anderson, and Mr Webber, while Omai followed them in a canoe. In their way they landed upon a small island, lying off Tettaha, where they found Towha and his attendants. After a little conversation between the chiefs, on the subject of the war, Towha addressed himself to the captain, soliciting his assistance. When he excused himself, Towha seemed displeased; thinking it rather extraordinary, that one who had constantly declared himself the friend of their island, should now refuse to fight against its enemies. Before they parted, Towha gave to Otoo two or three red feathers, tied up in a tuft; our party then re-embarked, having taken on board a priest, who was to assist at the solemnity.



of the  
mander  
meo in  
his time,  
ltations.  
nger to  
into the  
, on the  
him to  
to be sa-  
exploring  
. This  
t morai,  
necessary  
irous of  
fore pro-  
d to ac-  
consent-  
captain's  
nderson,  
hem in a  
a small  
nd Tow-  
versation  
ar, Tow-  
iting his  
Towha  
extraordi-  
d himself  
e to fight  
. Towha  
ied up in  
ng taken  
e solem-





FRANCIS

A HUMAN SACRIFICE IN A MORAI IN OTAHITI.

J. K. K. K.

As s  
 was abo  
 ors migh  
 that cap  
 would t  
 come to  
 ceeded,  
 boys ; b  
 four prie  
 The dea  
 that lay  
 of the pr  
 sitting b  
 company  
 ty pages  
 self ; our  
 him, wh  
 ed at a g  
 The d  
 attendan  
 tree, an  
 approach  
 twisted o  
 which h  
 wards re  
 the pries  
 gan a le  
 down yo  
 the sacri  
 stood by  
 bundles,  
 was the  
 allowed  
 The pra

As soon as they landed at Attahooroo, which was about two o'clock, Otoo desired that the sailors might be ordered to continue in the boat; and that captain Cook, Mr Anderson, and Mr Webber, would take off their hats as soon as they should come to the *morai*, to which they immediately proceeded, attended by numbers of men, and some boys; but not one woman was present. They found four priests, with their assistants, waiting for them. The dead body, or sacrifice, was in a small canoe that lay on the beach, fronting the *morai*. Two of the priests, with several of their attendants, were sitting by the canoe; the others at the *morai*. Our company stopped at the distance of twenty or thirty paces from the priests. Here Otoo placed himself; our gentlemen, and a few others, standing by him, while the majority of the people were removed at a greater distance.

The ceremonies now commenced. One of the attendants of the priests brought a young plantain-tree, and laid it down before the king. Another approached, bearing a small tuft of red feathers twisted on some fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, with which he touched one of Otoo's feet, and afterwards retired with it to his companions. One of the priests who were seated at the *morai*, now began a long prayer; and, at particular times, set down young plantain-trees, which were placed upon the sacrifice. During this prayer, an islander, who stood by the officiating priest, held in his hands two bundles, in one of which, as we afterwards found, was the royal *maro*; and the other, if we may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the *Eatooa*. The prayer being finished, the priests at the *morai*,

with their assistants, went and sat down by those who were upon the beach, carrying the two bundles with them. They here renewed their prayers, during which the plantain trees were taken, one by one, at various times, from off the intended body, which being wrapped up in cocoa-leaves and small branches, was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach. The priests placed themselves around it; some standing, and others sitting; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes. The body was now stripped of the leaves and branches, and placed parallel with the sea shore. Then one of the priests, standing at the feet of the corpse, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was occasionally joined by the others, each of them holding a tuft of red feathers in his hand. During this prayer, some hair was pulled off the head of the intended sacrifice, and the left eye was taken out; both which being wrapped up in a green leaf, were presented to the king; who, however, did not touch them, but gave, to the man who presented them, the tuft of red feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the eye and hair, was taken to the priests. Not long after his majesty sent them another piece of feathers. In the course of this last ceremony, a kingfisher making a noise in the trees, Otoo turned to captain Cook, saying, "That is the *Eatooa*;" and seemed to consider it as a favourable prognostic.

The corpse was then carried a little way, and laid under a tree; near which were fixed three thin pieces of wood variously carved. The bundles of cloth were placed on a part of the *mora*; and the tufts of red feathers were laid at the feet of the

dead bodies;  
selves;  
go as ne  
the chief  
with diff  
pearing  
times ask  
ous dema  
himself,  
to grant  
him to d  
men, hog  
hands;  
the sacrific  
in a whir  
the prayer  
some mor  
put it up  
now pray  
received  
them to  
then all t  
bundles o  
this place

The d  
conspicu  
and the t  
slowly.  
the pile o  
The prie  
the corps  
their assi  
feet, into  
ed it ove

dead body, round which the priests stationed themselves; and our gentlemen were now permitted to go as near as they pleased. He who seemed to be the chief priest spoke for about a quarter of an hour with different tones and gestures; sometimes appearing to expostulate with the deceased; at other times asking several questions; then making various demands, as if the dead person either had power himself, or interest with the deity, to engage him to grant such requests; among which he desired him to deliver Eimeo, Maheine, its chief, the women, hogs, and other things of the island, into their hands; which was, indeed, the express object of the sacrifice. He then prayed near half an hour, in a whining tone, and two other priests joined in the prayer, in the course of which a priest plucked some more hair from the head of the corpse, and put it upon one of the bundles. The chief priest now prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers received from Towha. Having finished, he gave them to another priest, who prayed in like manner; then all the tufts of feathers were placed upon the bundles of cloth, which concluded the ceremony at this place.

The dead body was now carried to the most conspicuous part of the *morai*, with the feathers, and the two bundles of cloth, while the drums beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against the pile of stones, and the body at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round the corpse, renewed their prayers, while some of their assistants dug a hole about the depth of two feet, into which they threw the victim, and covered it over with stones and earth. While they were



committing the body to the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, upon which Omai said to captain Cook, that it was the *Eatooa*. A fire having been made in the mean time, a lean half-starved dog was produced, and killed by twisting his neck. The hair was then singed off, and the entrails being taken out, were thrown into the fire, where they were left to be consumed; but the kidney, heart, and liver, were only roasted, by being put on heated stones; and the carcase of the dog, after being rubbed over with the blood, was, with the liver, &c. laid down before the priests, who were seated round the grave, praying. They for some time uttered ejaculations over the dog, while two men, at intervals, beat very loud on two drums; and a boy screamed, in a loud shrill voice, three times. This, they said, was to invite the *Eatooa* to feast on the banquet that they had provided for him. When the priests had finished their prayers, the body, heart, liver, &c. of the dog, were placed on a *whatta*, or scaffold, about six feet in height, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, which had been lately sacrificed. The priests and attendants now gave a kind of shout, which put an end to the ceremonies at present. The evening being arrived, our gentlemen were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where they were entertained, and lodged for the night. Having been informed that the religious rites were to be renewed the next morning, they would not quit the place while any thing remained to be seen. Some of them repaired to the scene of action early in the morning, and soon afterwards, a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same scaffold with the others. About eight o'clock,

Otoo too  
priests, a  
this time  
place wh  
evening;  
*morai*, an  
The king  
desired c

The c  
a young  
feet. A  
holding i  
and also  
commode  
val. W  
changed  
etween ou  
the same  
the prec  
continued  
the tufts  
on the a  
pigs wer  
killed, a  
bouring

One c  
found to  
heiteans  
the cloth  
before t  
in lengt  
and is p  
common  
islander



Otoo took our party again to the *morai*, where the priests, and a great multitude of people, were by this time assembled. The two bundles occupied the place where they had been deposited the preceding evening; the two drums were in the front of the *morai*, and the priests were stationed beyond them. The king placed himself between the drums, and desired captain Cook to stand by him.

The ceremony of this day began with bringing a young plantain tree, and laying it at his majesty's feet. A prayer was then repeated by the priests, holding in their hands several tufts of red feathers, and also a plume of ostrich feathers, which the commodore had presented to Otoo on his first arrival. When the priests had ended the prayer, they changed their station, and placed themselves between our gentlemen and the *morai*. One of them, the same who had performed the principal part of the preceding day, began another prayer, which continued near half an hour. During this prayer, the tufts of red feathers were put, one by one, upon the ark of the *Eatooa*. Not long after, four pigs were produced, one of which was immediately killed, and the three others were taken to a neighbouring sty.

One of the bundles was now untied; and it was found to contain the *maro*, with which the Otahiteans invest their kings. When taken out of the cloth, it was spread on the ground, at full length, before the priests. It is a girdle about fifteen feet in length, and one foot and a quarter in breadth, and is probably put on in the same manner as the common *maro*, or piece of cloth, used by these islanders to wrap round the waist. It was orna-

mented with yellow and red feathers; but principally with the former. One end of it was bordered with eight pieces, about the size and figure of a horse-shoe, whose edges were fringed with black feathers. The other end was forked, having the points of various lengths. The feathers were ranged in two rows, in square compartments, and produced a pleasing effect. They had been first fixed upon some of the cloth of the island, and then sewed to the upper end of the pendant which captain Wallis had left flying on shore, the first time of his arrival at Matavai. The priests pronounced a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and after it was ended, the badge of royalty was folded up with great care, and put into the cloth.

The other bundle, which we have already mentioned, under the name of the ark, was next opened at one end; but our party were not permitted to approach near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The intelligence they obtained respecting it, was, that the *Eotooa*, (or rather what is supposed to represent him) was concealed in it. This sacred repository is composed of the twisted fibres of the husk of the cocoa-nut; and its figure is roundish, with one end considerably thicker than the other.

The pig that had been killed was by this time cleaned, and its entrails taken out. These happened to have many of those convulsive motions which frequently appear in different parts, when an animal is killed; and this was considered as a very favourable omen to the intended expedition. After being exposed for some time, the entrails were carried and laid down before the priests. While one of them prayed, another closely inspected the en-

trails, a  
Having  
thrown  
heart,  
the dog  
thers, e  
ark, an

Four  
the mor  
platform  
terious  
these ca  
plantain  
articles,  
natives  
that the  
sent out

The  
was, to  
one of t  
not appe  
count of  
that des  
they us  
sacrifice  
way of  
men ha  
sufferer  
ple's wo  
the hea  
temple,  
been ki  
been k  
wretche

trails, and continued turning them gently with a stick. Having been sufficiently examined, they were then thrown into the fire. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, heart, &c. were now put upon the scaffold where the dog had been deposited; and then all the feathers, except the ostrich plume, being closed in the ark, an end was put to the whole solemnity.

Four double canoes remained upon the beach, all the morning, before the place of sacrifice. A small platform, covered with palm leaves, fastened in mysterious knots, was fixed on the fore-part of each of these canoes; and this also, is called a *morai*. Some plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, fish, and other articles, lay upon each of these naval *morais*. The natives said, that they belonged to the *Eatooa*, and that they were to attend the fleet that was to be sent out against Eimeo.

The unfortunate victim, offered on this occasion, was, to appearance, a middle-aged man, and was one of the lowest class of the people. But it did not appear that they had fixed upon him on account of his having committed any particular crime that deserved death. It is certain, however, that they usually select such guilty persons for their sacrifices, or else, vagabonds, who have no visible way of procuring an honest livelihood. Our gentlemen having examined the body of the unhappy sufferer, now offered up to the object of these people's worship, observed, that it was bloody about the head and face, and much bruised upon the right temple, which denoted the manner in which he had been killed. And they were informed, that he had been knocked on the head with a stone. The wretches who are destined to suffer on these occa-

sions, are never previously apprized of their fate. Whenever any one of the principal chiefs deems a human sacrifice necessary, on any great emergency, he fixes upon the victim, and then dispatches some of his trusty servants, who fall upon him suddenly, and either stone him to death, or beat out his brains with a club. The sovereign is next acquainted with it, whose presence is said to be absolutely requisite at the solemn rites that follow ; and, indeed, on the late occasion, Otoo bore a capital part. The solemnity itself is termed *Poore Erce*, or the prayer of the chief ; and the victim is called *Taata taboo*, or consecrated man.

The *morai*, where the late sacrifice was offered, is always appropriated for the burial of the king of the whole island, and likewise of his family, and some other persons of distinguished rank. It differs little, except in extent, from the common *morais*. Its principal part is a large oblong pile of stones, about thirteen feet in height, and contracted towards the top, with a quadrangular area on each side, loosely paved with pebbles, under which the bones of the chiefs are deposited. Not far from the end nearest the sea is the place of sacrifice, where is a very large *wabattu*, or scaffold, on which the offerings of fruits, and other vegetables, are placed ; but the animals are laid on a smaller one, and the human sacrifices are interred under the pavement. There are several reliques scattered about the place ; such as small stones raised in various parts of the pavement, some with bits of cloth fastened round them, others entirely covered with it ; and, upon the side of the large pile, fronting the area, are a great number of pieces of carved wood, in which their gods are supposed to reside

occasion  
of the la  
side. C  
human  
have re  
Just abo  
are plac  
dle, wh  
were lai  
rites.

It is p  
fering hu  
islands o  
each oth  
we shou  
is sacrific  
islands,  
cur so fr  
the hum  
less tha  
before t  
those sk  
able cha  
inferred  
these vi  
tice, th  
it cease  
less det  
to imp  
for relig  
this wa  
sion, t  
assembl  
verence

occasionally. There is a heap of stones at one end of the large scaffold with a sort of platform on one side. On this they deposit all the skulls of the human sacrifices, which they take up after they have remained under ground for some months. Just above them, many of the carved pieces of wood are placed; and here the *maro*, and the other bundle, which was supposed to contain the god *Oaro*, were laid during the celebration of the late solemn rites.

It is probable that this barbarous custom of offering human victims, prevails in all, or most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, however distant from each other some of them may be. And though we should suppose, that not more than one person is sacrificed at one time, either at Otaheite, or other islands, yet these occasions, in all probability, occur so frequently, as to make a terrible havock of the human species; for captain Cook reckoned no less than forty-nine skulls of former victims lying before the *morai*, at Attahooroo; and as none of those skulls appeared to have suffered any considerable change, or decay, from the weather, it may be inferred, that but a short time had elapsed since these victims had been offered. This horrid practice, though no consideration whatever can make it cease to be detestable, might, perhaps, be thought less detrimental, in some respects, if it contributed to impress any awe for the Deity, or veneration for religion, upon the minds of the spectators. But this was so far from being the case on the late occasion, that though a vast multitude of people had assembled at the *morai*, they showed very little reverence for what was transacting. And Omai hap-



pening to arrive after the ceremonies had begun, many of the islanders thronged round him, and were engaged, for the remaining part of the time, in making him recount some of his adventures; to which they listened with great eagerness of attention, regardless of the solemn offices which their priests were then performing. Indeed, the priests themselves, except the one who sustained the principal part, either from their being familiarised to such objects, or from their reposing no great degree of confidence in the efficacy of their religious institutions, maintained very little of that solemnity which is necessary to give to acts of devotion their proper effect. Their habit was but an ordinary one; they conversed together with great familiarity; and the only attempt they made to preserve decorum, was by exerting their authority, to prevent the populace from encroaching on the very spot where the rites were performed, and to suffer our gentlemen, as strangers, to come forward. They were, however, very candid in the answers which they gave to any interrogatories that were put to them, with regard to this inhuman institution. And, particularly, on being asked, what was the design of it, they replied, that it was an ancient custom, and was highly agreeable to their god, who came and fed upon the sacrifices; in consequence of which, he granted their petitions. It was then objected, that he certainly did not feed on these, as he was neither observed to do it, nor were the bodies of the sacrificed animals soon consumed; and that as to the corpse of a human victim, they prevented his feeding on that, by interring it. In answer to these objections, they gave it as their opi-

nion, that only on people till the putrefac-

Humtom tha Otaheite emerged Besides slain in as trophies dies to which t all the c with gro hole, and their di-

They chiefs t taha, T were all boo, we There t great al interred of stone who los one hol perform pomp a of people the vic The va

nion, that he came in the night, invisibly, and fed only on the soul, or immaterial part, which (these people say) remains about the place of sacrifice, till the carcase of the victim is totally wasted by putrefaction.

Human sacrifices are not the only barbarous custom that still prevails amongst the inhabitants of Otaheite, though, in many other respects, they have emerged from the brutal manners of savage life. Besides cutting out the jaw-bones of their enemies slain in battle, which they carry about with them as trophies, they in some measure offer up their bodies to the *Eatooa*. Soon after an engagement, in which they have come off victorious, they collect all the dead, and bring them to the *morai*, where, with great form and ceremony, they dig a large hole, and bury them all in, as so many offerings to their divinities.

They treat in a different manner their own chiefs that fall in battle. Their late king, Tootaha, Toubourai-tamaide, and another chief, who were all slain in an engagement with those of Tiara-bo, were brought to the *morai* at Attahooroo. There the priests cut out their bowels before the great altar; and their dead bodies were afterwards interred in three different places, near the great pile of stones above-mentioned; and the common men, who lost their lives in the battle, were all buried in one hole, at the foot of the same pile. This was performed the day after the battle with much pomp and formality, amidst a numerous concourse of people, as a thanksgiving offering to the deity, for the victory they had obtained the preceding day. The vanquished, in the mean time, had taken re-

fuge in the mountains, where they remained upwards of a week, till the fury of the victors began to abate. A treaty was then set on foot by which it was agreed, that Otoo should be proclaimed king of the whole island; and the solemnity of investing him with the *maro*, or badge of royalty, was performed at the *mora*, with great magnificence.

At the close of the very extraordinary scene exhibited at the *mora*, our party embarked about twelve o'clock, in order to return to Matavai; and, in their way, paid a visit to Towha, who had continued in the little island, where they met him the preceding day. Some conversation about public affairs passed between Otoo and him; and the latter entreated captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally, in their war against Eimeo. By his positive refusal he entirely lost the good opinion of this chief.

Before they separated, he interrogated our gentlemen concerning the solemnity at which they had been present; and asked particularly, if it answered their expectations; what opinion they entertained of its efficacy; and whether such acts of worship were frequent in their own country? They had been silent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but as soon as it was completed, freely expressed their sentiments upon the subject to Otoo and his attendants; consequently captain Cook did not conceal his detestation of it, in this conversation with Towha. Exclusive of the barbarity of the bloody custom, he urged the unreasonableness of it; alleging that such a sacrifice, instead of making the *Eatooa* propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that, from this very circumstance, he concluded that their in-

tended  
successf  
upon co  
ing mis  
three pa  
ther pe  
avowed  
der the  
such a  
as coul  
in conv  
the sub  
ported  
appeare  
ing info  
a man  
would  
death.  
(vile!  
about i  
debate  
Towha  
ment t  
greatest  
vant, t  
on this  
master  
Lea  
Oparre  
night.  
their v  
observ  
their p  
them

tended expedition against Maheine would be unsuccessful. This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture ; but there was little danger of being mistaken ; for, respecting this war, there were three parties in this island, one violent for it, another perfectly indifferent about it ; and the third avowed supporters of Maheine and his cause. Under these circumstances, it was not probable that such a plan of military operations would be settled as could insure success. Omai acted as interpreter, in conveying the captain's sentiments to Towha, on the subject of the late horrid sacrifice ; and he supported his arguments with such spirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry ; especially, on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of a man in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this he exclaimed, *maeno ! maeno !* (vile ! vile !) and would not hear a syllable more about it. Many of the natives were present at this debate ; particularly the attendants and servants of Towha ; and when Omai mentioned the punishment that would in England be inflicted upon the greatest man, if he dared to kill the meanest servant, they listened very attentively ; and, perhaps, on this subject, they thought differently from their master.

Leaving Towha, our gentlemen proceeded to Oparre, where Otoo solicited them to pass the night. They landed in the evening ; and, on their way to his habitation, had an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves in their private *beevas*. They saw about a hundred of them sitting in a house ; in the midst of whom were

two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently upon a drum; and the women, at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy. The assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave them; few of them taking any notice of the strangers, and the performers never once ceasing. When the party arrived at Otoo's house, it was almost dark. Here they were entertained with one of their public *beevas* or plays, in which his three sisters represented the principal characters. This they call a *beeva raa*, and no person is suffered to enter the house or area where it is exhibited. This is always the case when the royal sisters are the performers. Their dress, on this occasion, was truly elegant and picturesque, and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were the performers, seemed to afford greater entertainment to the audience, which was numerous. The captain and his companions proceeded the next morning to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparre; but his mother, sisters, and many other women attended the captain on board, and Otoo followed a short time after.

While Otoo and captain Cook had been absent from the ships, they had been sparingly supplied with fruit, and had not many visitors. After their return, we had abundance of company and provisions. On the 4th, a party of us, among whom was Otoo, dined ashore with Omai, who provided excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, captain Cook accompanied Otoo back to his dwelling, where he

found all  
provision  
there wa  
sence.

process i  
compose  
or panda  
very fine  
the juice  
of wood  
oven, w  
hot ston  
Three o  
the seve  
corporat  
turned  
nearly o  
hog bei  
they, to  
fruit, an  
tain's sh  
royal fa

A yo  
lambd  
Cook's  
This w  
ly one  
the En

On t  
fire-wor  
of who  
number  
insomuc  
keep to



found all his servants busy in getting a quantity of provisions ready for him. Amongst other articles there was a large hog, which they killed in his presence. There was also a large pudding; the whole process in making which the captain saw. It was composed of bread-fruit, plantains, taro, and palm or pandanus-nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up very fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of the juice of cocoa-nut kernels was put into a kind of wooden tray. The other articles, hot from the oven, were put into this vessel; together with some hot stones, in order to make the contents simmer. Three or four persons were employed in stirring up the several ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoa nut was turned to oil; and the whole mass, at last, was nearly of the consistency of a hasty-pudding. The hog being baked, and the pudding being made, they, together with two living hogs, some bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts were sent on board the captain's ship in a canoe, followed by him and all the royal family.

A young ram, of the Cape-breed, that had been lambled and carefully brought up on board captain Cook's ship, was killed by a dog the following day. This was the more to be regretted, as it was the only one of that breed that we had; and only one of the English breed was now remaining.

On the 7th, in the evening, we exhibited some fire-works before a vast concourse of people, some of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; insomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to see the whole of the entertain-

ment. What concluded the business was a table-rocket. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute amongst them now fled with precipitation.

On the 8th of September, a party of us dined with our former shipmate Oedidee, on fish and pork. The hog weighed about thirty pounds; and it may be worth mentioning, that it was alive, dressed, and brought upon the table within the hour. We had but just dined, when Otoo came and asked me if my belly was full? On my answering in the affirmative, he said, 'Then come along with me.' I accordingly went with him to his father's, where I found some employed in dressing two girls with a prodigious quantity of fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. The one end of each piece of cloth, of which there were a good many, was held up over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies under the arm-pits. Then the upper ends were let fall, and hung down in folds to the ground over the other, so far as to bear resemblance to a circular hoop-petticoat. Afterwards round the outside of all were wrapped several pieces of differently coloured cloth, which considerably increased the size, so that it was not less than five or six yards in circuit, and the weight of this singular attire was as much as the poor girls could support. To each were hung two *taames*, or breast-plates, by way of enriching the whole, and giving it a picturesque appearance. Thus equipped, they were conducted on board the ship, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, which, with the cloth, was a present to me from Otoo's father. Persons of either sex, dressed in

ble-  
the  
lute  
  
ined  
ork.  
may  
ssed,  
We  
d me  
e af-  
e. I  
ere I  
th a  
y sin-  
loth,  
ld up  
r was  
-pits.  
wn in  
bear  
After-  
ever-  
consi-  
t less  
ght of  
girls  
ames;  
whole,  
Thus  
ship,  
fruit,  
from  
sed in



THE BODY OF TEE A CHIEF, AS PRESERVED AFTER DEATH IN OTAHITI.

this man  
never pr  
are to be  
upon an  
such a p  
I had c  
round th

The r  
five hog  
and some  
visions w  
of mack  
for two  
were sol

Otoo  
and cont  
treated a  
three sis  
were nev  
met with

The p  
had now  
embalme  
inquiry,  
Tee, a c  
island, c  
toopapeo  
common  
closed w  
those lit  
large ca  
body wa  
within t  
who had

this manner, are called *atee*; but I believe it is never practised, except when large presents of cloth are to be made. At least I never saw it practised upon any other occasion; nor, indeed, had I ever such a present before; but both captain Clerke and I had cloth given to us afterwards, thus wrapped round the bearers.

The next day captain Cook received a present of five hogs and some fruit from Otoo; and one hog and some fruit from each of his sisters. Other provisions were also in great plenty. Great quantities of mackarel had been caught here by the natives for two or three successive days; some of which were sold on board the ships.

Otoo was equally attentive to supply our wants, and contribute to our amusement. On the 10th, he treated a party of us at Oparre with a play. His three sisters were the performers, and their dresses were new and elegant, much more so than we had met with in any of these islands.

The principal object, however, that the captain had now in view in going to Oparre, was to see an embalmed corpse, near the residence of Otoo. On inquiry, says he, I found it to be the remains of Tee, a chief well known to me, when I was at this island, during my last voyage. It was lying in a *toopapao*, more elegantly constructed than their common ones. It was in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade. It resembled one of those little houses, or awnings, belonging to their large canoes. When we arrived at the place the body was under cover, and wrapped up in cloth within the *toopapao*; but, at my desire, the man who had the care of it brought it out, and laid it



upon a kind of bier, in such a manner, that we had as full a view of it as we could wish; but we were not allowed to go within the pales that enclosed the *toopapaoo*. After he had thus exhibited the corpse, he hung the place with mats and cloth, so disposed as to produce a very pretty effect. We found the body not only entire in every part; but, what surprised us much more, was, that putrefaction seemed scarcely to be begun, as there was not the least disagreeable smell proceeding from it; though the climate is one of the hottest, and Tee had been dead above four months. The only remarkable alteration that happened, was a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes; but the hair and nails were in their original state, and still adhered firmly; and the several joints were quite pliable, or in that kind of relaxed state which happens to persons who faint suddenly. Such were Mr Anderson's remarks to me, who also told me, that on his inquiring into the method of effecting this preservation of their dead bodies, he had been informed, that soon after their death they are disembowelled, by drawing the intestines and other *viscera* out at the *anus*; and the whole cavity is then filled or stuffed with cloth introduced through the same part; that when any moisture appeared on the skin it was carefully dried up, and the bodies afterwards rubbed all over with a large quantity of perfumed cocoa-nut oil; which being frequently repeated, preserved them a great many months; but that at last they gradually moulder away. This was the information Mr Anderson received; for my own part I could not learn any more about their mode of operation, than what Omai told me, who

said, t  
which  
oil; a  
was a  
men w  
manne  
for a  
are lai  
terwar  
and at  
We  
and al  
them t  
self, h  
they s  
man sa  
offered  
within  
that th  
nume  
tain w  
had h  
too la  
presen  
ceding  
stored  
the la  
they h  
Ota  
the m  
next c  
captai  
and n  
nishing

said, that they made use of the juice of a plant which grows amongst the mountains; of cocoa-nut oil; and of frequent washing with sea-water. I was also told, that the bodies of all their great men who die a natural death are preserved in this manner; and that they expose them to public view for a very considerable time after. At first they are laid out every day when it does not rain; afterwards the intervals become greater and greater; and at last they are seldom to be seen.

We quitted Oparre in the evening, leaving Otoo and all the royal family. The captain saw none of them till the 12th; when all, except the chief himself, honoured him with a visit. He was gone, they said, to Attahooroo, to assist at another human sacrifice, sent by the chief of Tiaraboo to be offered up at the *morai*. This second instance, within so short a period, was a melancholy proof that the victims of this bloody superstition are very numerous amongst this humane people. The captain would have been present at this sacrifice also, had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. For the same reason he omitted being present at a public transaction at Oparre the preceding day, when Otoo, with great solemnity, restored to the adherents of the late king Tootaba the lands and possessions, of which, after his death, they had been deprived.

Otoo returned the next evening from exercising the most disagreeable of his royal duties; and, the next day, being honoured with his company, the captains Cook and Clerke mounted on horseback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators. Once or

twice before this, Omai had, indeed, attempted to get on a horse; but he had as often fallen off before he could contrive to seat himself properly; this was therefore the first time they had seen anybody on horseback. What the captains had begun, was repeated daily by one or another of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen the use that was made of these animals, they were greatly delighted with them; and we were of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that their European visitors had carried amongst them.

The next day Etary, or Olla, the god of Bola-bola, removed from the neighbourhood of Mata-vai to Oparre, attended by several sailing canoes. Otoo, we were told, did not approve of his being so near our station, where his people could more conveniently invade our property. Otoo, it must be acknowledged, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies; and it was principally owing to his regulations that so few were committed. He had erected a small house or two behind our post; and two others near our tents, between the river and the sea. Some of his own people continually kept watch in all these places; and, as his father usually resided on Matavai Point, we were, in a manner, surrounded by them. They not only defended us in the night from thieves, but they had an opportunity of observing every thing that passed in the day; and were ready to receive contributions from such girls as were privately connected with our people, which was usually done every morning: so that the measures he had taken

to sect  
purpos  
Otoo  
was rec  
he give  
begged  
captain  
someth  
set out  
Nothing  
or cur  
some c  
remony  
tion wa  
about t  
approv  
over-ru  
that it  
for, in  
ligence  
that th  
siderab  
Cap  
mornin  
compa  
which  
They  
three  
Otoo.  
theref  
carry  
them  
Etary  
he sho

to secure our safety, answered the more essential purpose of enlarging his own profits.

Otoo acquainted captain Cook, that his presence was required at Oparre, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and begged he would accompany him thither. The captain readily consented, expecting to meet with something deserving his notice. Accordingly they set out on the 16th, attended by Mr Anderson. Nothing, however, occurred, that was interesting or curious. Etary and his followers presented some coarse cloth and hogs to Otoo, with some ceremony and a set speech. After this a consultation was held between them and some other chiefs about their expedition to Eimeo. Etary at first disapproved of it; but his objections were at length over-ruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, that it was too late to deliberate upon this business; for, in the evening, a messenger arrived with intelligence, that there had been some skirmishes, but that the loss or advantage on either side was inconsiderable.

Captain Cook, Mr Anderson, and Omai, in the morning of the 18th, went again to Oparre, accompanied by Otoo; taking with them the sheep which the captain intended to leave upon the island. They consisted of an English ram and ewe and three Cape ewes; all which he made a present of to Otoo. All the three cows had taken the bull; he therefore thought it advisable to divide them and carry some to Ulietea. With this view he ordered them to be brought before him, and proposed to Etary, that if he would leave his bull with Otoo, he should have this and one of the cows. To this



proposal Etary at first started some objections ; but at last agreed to it ; however, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers opposed the making any exchange whatever.

The captain, upon this, suspecting that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, dropped the idea of an exchange ; and finally determined to leave them all with Otoo ; whom he strictly enjoined not to suffer them to be removed from Oparre, till he should have got a stock of young ones ; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands.

This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary and his party, and attended Otoo to another place not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, as a present from their master to the king. These were delivered with the usual ceremonies, and a harangue, in which the speaker inquired after the health of Otoo and of his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his ministers ; and then the dispute with Eimeo was formally discussed. The deputies of this chief were advocates for prosecuting the war with vigour, advising Otoo to offer a human sacrifice on the occasion. A chief who constantly attended the person of Otoo opposed it, seemingly with great strength of argument. The captain was now confirmed in his opinion, that Otoo never entered heartily into the spirit of this war. He received repeated messages from Towha, urging him to hasten to his assistance.

Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to

Matava  
the 19  
fruit.

ther, w  
tain Cl  
for both  
day wi  
sions th

Our  
put in  
the isla  
visiting  
fore re  
from th

Earl  
to info  
Matava  
join the  
island ;  
there.

motion  
the ba  
Captain  
vey of

Wh  
those v  
about s  
more o  
have a  
after fo  
till the  
nate d  
getting  
He th



Matavai, leaving him at Oparre. This day and the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit. Otoo being informed of this, he and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to captain Clerke, came from Oparre with a large supply for both ships. All the royal family came the next day with presents, so that we now had more provisions than we could consume.

Our water being all on board, and every thing put in order, the captain began to think of quitting the island, that he might have a sufficient time for visiting others in this neighbourhood. We therefore removed our observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails.

Early the next morning, Otoo came on board to inform captain Cook, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparre and that part of the island; and that there would be a general review there. The squadron of Matavai was soon after in motion; and, after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of them.

What they call their war canoes, which are those with stages, on which they fight, amount to about sixty in number; there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The captain was ready to have attended them to Oparre; but the chiefs soon after formed a resolution, that they would not move till the next day. This appeared to be a fortunate delay, as it afforded him an opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders that

some of them should go through the necessary manœuvres. Two were accordingly ordered out into the bay; in one of which, Otoo, captain Cook, and Mr King, embarked, and Omai went on board the other. When we had got sufficient sea-room, we faced, and advanced upon each other, and retreated by turns, as quick as our rowers could paddle. During this, the warriors on the stages flourished their weapons, and played a hundred antic tricks, which could answer no other end, in our judgment, than to work up their passions, and prepare them for fighting. Otoo stood by the side of our stage and gave the necessary orders when to advance and when to retreat. In this, great judgment, and a quick eye combined together, seemed requisite to seize every advantage that might offer, and to avoid giving any advantage to the adversary. At last, after advancing and retreating to and from each other, at least a dozen of times, the two canoes closed head to head, or stage to stage; and, after a short conflict, the troops on our stage were supposed to be all killed, and we were boarded by Omai and his associates. At that very instant, Otoo and all our paddlers leaped over-board, as if reduced to the necessity of endeavouring to save their lives by swimming.

If Omai's information is to be depended upon, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner. He told us that they sometimes begin with lashing the two vessels together, head to head, and then fight till all the warriors are killed on one side or the other. But this close combat, I apprehend, is never practised but when they are determined to conquer or die. Indeed,

one or  
they ne  
prisoners

The  
tirely in  
ral eng  
tles are  
place of  
the pre  
and fea  
canoes,  
day, be  
ly decid  
selves l  
the sho  
for the  
the age  
day the  
the *Ear*  
as sacri  
any. A  
conquer  
terms;  
sometim  
Omai t  
the mer  
where h  
death t  
to escap  
As so  
on his s  
the can  
the bay  
His coa

one or the other must happen, for all agree that they never give quarter unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the next day.

The power and strength of these islands lie entirely in their natives. We never heard of a general engagement on land; and all their decisive battles are fought on the water. If the time and place of conflict are fixed upon by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in diversions and feasting. Toward morning, they launch the canoes, put every thing in order, and, with the day, begin the battle, the fate of which generally decides the dispute. The vanquished save themselves by a precipitate flight, and such as reach the shore fly with their friends to the mountains; for the victors, while their fury lasts, spare neither the aged, nor women, nor children. The next day they assemble at the *morai*, to return thanks to the *Eatooa* for the victory, and to offer up the slain as sacrifices, and the prisoners also, if they have any. After this a treaty is set on foot, and the conquerors, for the most part, obtain their own terms; by which particular districts of land, and sometimes whole islands, change their owners. Omai told us that he was once taken prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and carried to that island, where he and some others would have been put to death the next day, if they had not found means to escape in the night.

As soon as this mock-fight was over, Omai put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and was paddled all along the shore of the bay, so that every one had a full view of him. His coat of mail did not draw the attention of his

countrymen so much as might have been expected. Some of them, indeed, had seen a part of it before; and there were others again who had taken such a dislike to Omai, from his imprudent conduct at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing, however singular, that was exhibited by him.

Otoo and his father came on board in the morning of the 22d, to know when Captain Cook proposed sailing. For hearing that there was a good harbour at Eimeo, he had informed them that he should visit that island on his passage to Huaheine; and they proposed to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail at the same time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take his departure, he submitted to them the appointment of the day; and the Wednesday following was determined upon; when he was to receive on board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points being agreed on, the captain proposed immediately setting out for Oparre, where all the fleet was to assemble this day, and to be reviewed.

As captain Cook was getting into his boat, news arrived that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and Towha's fleet had returned to Attahooroo. From this unexpected event, the war canoes, instead of rendezvousing at Oparre, were ordered to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparre, accompanied by Mr King and Omai. Soon after their arrival, a messenger arrived from Eimeo, and related the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being disadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was severely

censure  
had ob  
commo  
that T  
ceived,  
tain Co  
those o  
upon th  
ed to es  
whosoe  
rience t  
turned

This  
fect, a  
tile inte  
port  
prove  
cluding  
captain  
have be  
he shou  
fore cor  
waiting  
giving  
expecte

While  
Oparre,  
the atte  
in Atta  
the pea  
asked to  
chose ra  
knowing  
memora

censured, whose delay, in sending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was even currently reported, that Towha, resenting the treatment he had received, had declared that, immediately after captain Cook's departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend; and that whosoever presumed to attack him, should experience the weight of his displeasure, when he returned to their island.

This declaration, probably, had the desired effect, and if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, we heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it. The old man wisely considered, that captain Cook's going with them to Eimeo might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not interfere in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the captain; though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected.

While we were debating on this subject at Oparre, a messenger arrived from Towha, desiring the attendance of Otoo the next day, at the *morai* in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the gods for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook was asked to attend; but being much out of order, he chose rather to decline it. Desirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on so memorable an occasion, he sent Mr King and Omai



to observe the particulars, and returned to his ship, attended by Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and several other women.

'At first,' says captain Cook, 'I thought that this numerous train of females came into my boat with no other view than to get a passage to Matavai. But when we arrived at the ship, they told me, they intended passing the night on board, for the express purpose of undertaking the cure of the disorder I complained of; which was a pain of the rheumatic kind, extending from the hip to the foot. I accepted the friendly offer, had a bed spread for them on the cabin floor, and submitted myself to their directions. I was desired to lay myself down amongst them. Then, as many of them as could get round me, began to squeeze me with both hands, from head to foot, but more particularly on the parts where the pain was lodged, till they made my bones crack, and my flesh became a perfect mummy. In short, after undergoing this discipline about a quarter of an hour, I was glad to get away from them. However, the operation gave me immediate relief, which encouraged me to submit to another rubbing down before I went to bed; and it was so effectual that I found myself pretty easy all the night after. My female physicians repeated their prescription the next morning before they went ashore, and again, in the evening, when they returned on board; after which I found the pains entirely removed; and the cure being perfected, they took their leave of me the following morning. This they call *romee*; an operation which, in my opinion, far exceeds the flesh-brush, or any thing of the kind that we make use of externally. It is

univers  
ing son  
nerally  
pears l  
them, t  
upon h  
an exc

On  
King,  
Mr Ki  
the fol  
in a car  
we land  
to Atta  
I expect  
attenda  
the can  
sleep;  
tioned  
mediate  
ha's pe  
I had  
Towha  
any thi  
if Toote  
and tha  
to go to  
then en  
chief, b  
him.  
I should  
quence  
tioning  
lame, a

universally practised amongst these islanders ; being sometimes performed by the men, but more generally by the women. If, at any time, one appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they immediately begin to practise the *romee* upon his legs ; and I have always found it to have an exceeding good effect.

On Thursday the 25th of September, Otoo, Mr King, and Omai, returned from Attahooroo ; and Mr King gave a narrative of what he had seen to the following effect : ' At sun-set we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparre. About nine o'clock we landed at that extremity of Tettaha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected, would be interesting. Otoo and his attendants seated themselves upon the beach, near the canoe in which Towha sat. He was then asleep ; but being awakened, and Otoo's name mentioned to him, a plantain-tree and a dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet ; and several of Towha's people came and conversed with him. After I had been for some time seated close to Otoo, Towha never stirring from his canoe, nor saying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He asked me if *Toote* was displeased with him ; I answered, No ; and that he was his *taio* ; and that I was ordered to go to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omai then entered into a long conversation with this chief, but I could not gather any information from him. On my returning to Otoo, he desired that I should go to eat, and then to sleep ; in consequence of which Omai and I left him. On questioning Omai on that head, he said, Towha was lame, and therefore could not stir ; but that Otoo

and he would soon converse together in private. This was probably true ; for those we left with Otoo came to us in a little time ; and, about ten minutes after, Otoo himself arrived, when we all went to sleep in his canoe.

The *ava* was the next morning in great plenty. One man drank to such excess, that he lost his senses, and appeared to be convulsed. He was held by two men, who busied themselves in plucking off his hair by the roots. I left this spectacle to see a more affecting one. It was the meeting of Towha and his wife, and a young girl, who was said to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and discharging plenty of blood and tears, they washed, embraced the chief, and seemed perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's sufferings were not yet concluded. Terridiri (Oberea's son) arrived ; and she, with great composure, repeated those ceremonies to him which she had just performed on meeting her father. Towha having brought a war canoe from Eimeo, I inquired if he had killed the people belonging to her ; and was informed, that there was not a person in her when she was captured.

About ten or eleven o'clock, we left Tettaha, and landed close to the *morai* of Attahooroo early in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled upon the beach, opposite the *morai*, having three hogs in each. We expected the solemnity would have been performed the same afternoon ; but nothing was done, as neither Towha nor Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Eimeo, with a small pig and a plantain-tree, which he placed at Otoo's feet. They conversed some time together, and the Eimeo chief

often  
Otoo  
heard  
T  
or ei  
mora  
too,  
in his  
the  
wrap  
were  
grave  
end  
tree,  
sheat  
T  
at in  
a me  
nativ  
hour  
unco  
ped  
com  
mixe  
posit  
for a  
from  
and  
Ear  
site  
mor  
Her  
end

often repeating the words, *Warry, Warry*, (false,) Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it.

The next day Towha and Potatou, with seven or eight large canoes, arrived, and landed near the *morai*. Several plantain-trees were brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs. Towha remained in his canoe. The ceremony was commenced by the principal priest, who brought out the *maro*, wrapped up, and a bundle of a conic shape. These were placed at the head of what I supposed to be a grave. Then three priests sat down at the other end of the grave; having with them a plantain-tree, a branch of some other kind of tree, and the sheath of the flower of the cocoa-nut tree.

The priests separately repeated sentences; and at intervals, two, and sometimes all three, chanted a melancholy ditty, very little attended to by the natives. This kind of recitative continued near an hour. Then, after a short prayer, the chief priest uncovered the *maro*, and Otoo rose up, and wrapped it about him, holding in his hand a bonnet, composed of the red feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackish feathers. He stood opposite the three priests, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes; when a man rising suddenly from the crowd, said something ending with *beiva!* and the crowd echoed back to him three times *Earee!* The company then repaired to the opposite side of a large pile of stones, where is the king's *morai*; which is not much unlike a large grave. Here the same ceremony was again performed, and ended with three cheers. The *maro* was now wrap-

ped up, and ornamented by the addition of a small piece of red feathers.

The people now proceeded to a large hut near the *morai*, where they seated themselves in solemn order. An oration was then made by a man of Tiaraboo, which ended in about ten minutes. He was followed by a man of Attahooroo; Potatou spoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Tooteo, Otoo's orator, exhibited after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other speeches were made, but not attended to. Omai said, that the substance of their speeches recommended friendship, and not fighting; but as many of the speakers expressed themselves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, some recriminations and protestations of their future good intentions. In the midst of their harangues, a man of Attahooroo rose up, having a sling fastened to his waist, and a large stone upon his shoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes in the open space, and chanting a few short sentences, he threw the stone down. This stone, together with a plantain-tree that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the conclusion of the speeches, carried to the *morai*; one of the priests, and Otoo with him, saying something upon the occasion.

Returning to Oparre, the sea-breeze having set in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleasant walk from Tettaha to Oparre. A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves suspended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two districts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the stone and sling. With him Otoo's father held a long conversation, and ap-

peare  
under  
the l  
Fr  
relate  
giving  
of th  
appe  
of t  
offer  
befor  
that  
mai,  
mad  
we v  
now  
a ve  
way  
cere  
debt  
Wh  
mes  
at a  
han  
men  
him  
Wh  
are  
tree  
pro  
It i  
all  
poi



peared extremely angry. He was enraged, as I understood, at the part which Towha had taken in the Eimeo business.

From what can be judged of this solemnity, as related by Mr King, it had not been only a thanksgiving, as Omai told us, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave, mentioned by Mr King, appears to be the very spot where the celebration of the rites began when the human sacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was present, and before which the victim was laid. It is here also that they first invest the kings with the *maro*. Omai, who had seen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, described the whole solemnity when we were here; which is nearly the same as that now described by Mr King; though perhaps, upon a very different occasion. The plantain-tree is always the first thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates; and probably, on many other occasions. While Towha was at Eimeo he sent one or more messengers to Otoo every day. Every messenger, at all times, carried a young plantain-tree in his hand, which he laid at the foot of Otoo, before he mentioned his errand; then seated himself before him, and related the particulars of his message. When two men are in such high dispute that blows are expected to ensue, if one should lay a plantain-tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without farther animosity. It is, indeed, the olive branch of these people upon all occasions.

As our friends knew that we were upon the point of sailing, they all paid us a visit on the 26th

and brought more hogs with them than we wanted; for, having no salt left to preserve any, we had fully sufficient for our present use.

Captain Cook accompanied Otoo the next day to Oparre; and before he left it, took a survey of the cattle and poultry, which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising way; and seemed properly attended to. Two of the geese, as well as two of the ducks, were sitting; but the pea-hen and turkey-hen had neither of them begun to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulietea; and to reserve the other two for the use of any other islands he might touch at in his passage to the north.

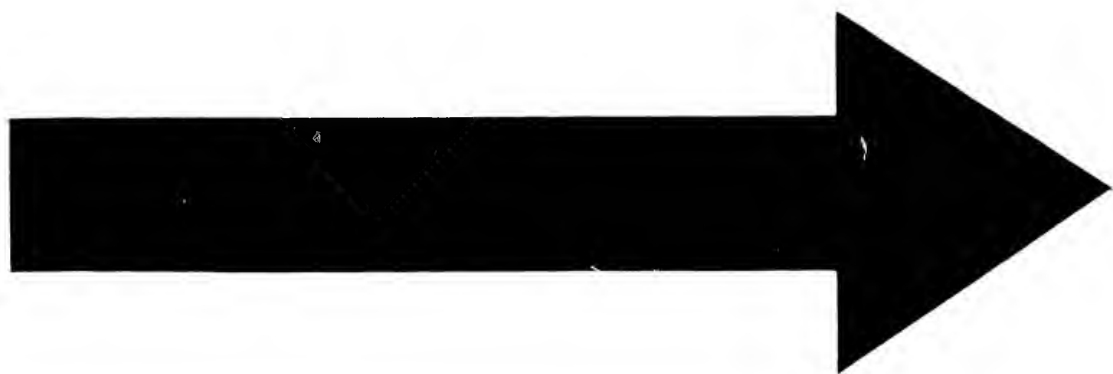
'A circumstance,' says captain Cook, 'which I shall now mention, will show, that these people are capable of much address and art, to gain their purposes. Amongst other things which, at different times, I had given to this chief, was a spying-glass. After having it in his possession two or three days, tired of its novelty, and probably finding it of no use to him, he carried it privately to captain Clerke, and told him, that as he had been his very good friend, he had got a present for him, which he knew would be very agreeable. But, says Otoo, you must not let *Toote* know it, because he wants it, and I would not let him have it. He then put the glass into captain Clerke's hands; at the same time time assuring him, that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke at first declined accepting it; but Otoo insisted upon it, and left it with him. Some days after he put captain Clerke in mind of the glass; who, though he did not want

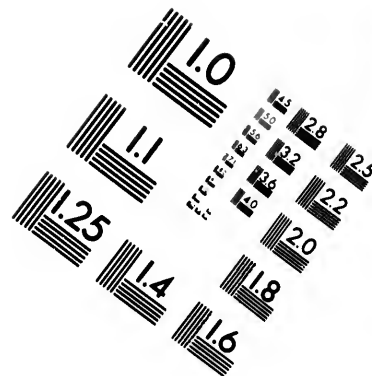
it, w  
ing t  
island  
no so  
five s  
be th  
you a  
he ac  
be to  
'  
island  
This  
ly eq  
I ma  
he th  
time  
flags  
zen,  
sel,  
man  
dress  
Oma  
and  
that  
I ga  
to T  
pres  
'  
stoc  
only  
heir  
muc  
not  
unl

it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking that a few axes would be of more use at this island, produced four to give him in return. Otoo no sooner saw this than he said, 'Toote offered me five for it.'—'Well,' says captain Clerke, 'if that be the case, your friendship for me shall not make you a loser, and you shall have six axes.' These he accepted; but desired again, that I might not be told what he had done.

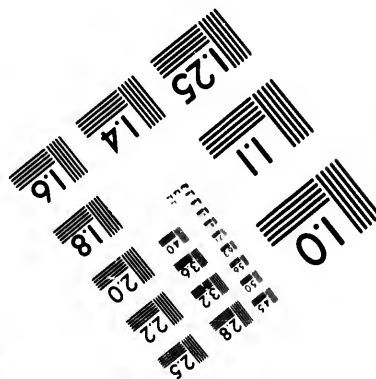
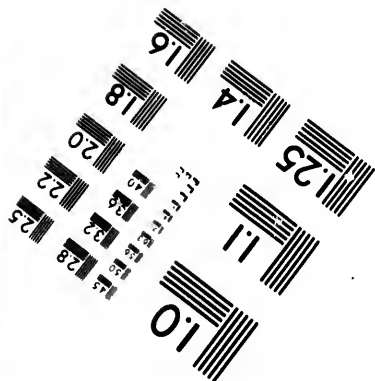
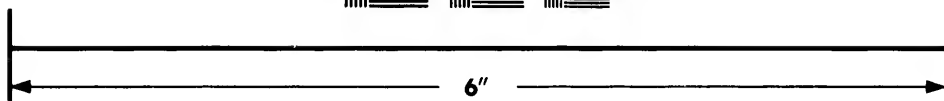
'Our friend Omai got one good thing at this island, for the many good things he gave away. This was a very fine double sailing-canoe, completely equipped, and fit for the sea. Some time before, I made up for him a suit of English colours, but he thought these too valuable to be used at this time; and patched up a parcel of colours, such as flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his vessel, all at the same time; and drew together as many people to look at her, as a man of war would, dressed, in an European port. These streamers of Omai were a mixture of English, French, Spanish, and Dutch, which were all the European colours that he had seen. When I was last at this island, I gave to Otoo an English jack and pendant, and to Towha a pendant; which I now found they had preserved with the greatest care.

'Omai had also provided himself with a good stock of cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are not only in greater plenty, but much better, at Otaheite, than at any of the Society Islands; insomuch, that they are articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently, and so much unlike himself, as he did, in many instances, but





A resolution test chart featuring various patterns of vertical and horizontal lines. The patterns are arranged in a grid-like fashion, with some larger and more prominent than others. Each pattern is accompanied by a numerical value indicating its resolution. The values include 1.0, 1.1, 1.25, 1.4, 1.6, 1.8, 2.0, 2.2, 2.5, 2.8, 3.2, 3.6, 4.0, and 4.5. The patterns consist of groups of lines of varying thicknesses and spacings, designed to test the ability of a system to resolve fine details.



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 877-4503



15 28 25  
22 22  
20  
9

10  
01

for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few of their acquaintance, engrossed him entirely to themselves, with no other view than to strip him of every thing he had got. And they would, undoubtedly, have succeeded in their scheme, if I had not put a stop to it in time, by taking the most useful articles of his property into my possession. But even this would not have saved Omai from ruin, if I had suffered these relations of his to have gone with, or to have followed us to, his intended place of settlement, Huahine. This they had intended; but I disappointed their further views of plunder, by forbidding them to show themselves in that island, while I remained in the neighbourhood; and they knew me too well not to comply.

On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed me, that he had got a canoe, which he desired I would take with me, and carry home, as a present from him to the *Earee rahie no Pretane*; it being the only thing, he said, that he could send worth his Majesty's acceptance. I was not a little pleased with Otoo, for this mark of his gratitude. It was a thought entirely his own, not one of us having given him the least hint about it; and it showed, that he fully understood to whom he was indebted for the most valuable presents that he had received. At first I thought that this canoe had been a model of one of their vessels of war; but I soon found that it was a small *toahab*, about sixteen feet long. It was double, and seemed to have been built for the purpose; and was decorated with all those pieces of carved work, which they usually fix upon their canoes. As it was too large for me to take on board, I could only thank

him  
pleas  
been

this  
that  
was  
his  
by  
prod  
pow  
hors

V  
tom  
in  
then  
to  
som  
hav  
sent  
tho  
traf  
tive  
sep  
ter  
rou  
the  
spa  
fou

so  
On  
ba  
sio

him for his good intention; but it would have pleased him much better if his present could have been accepted.

'The frequent visits we had already paid to this island, seem to have created a full persuasion, that the intercourse will not be discontinued. It was strictly enjoined to me by Otoo, to request, in his name, the *Eatree rabie no Pretane*, to send him, by the next ships, red feathers, and the birds that produce them; axes, half a dozen musquets, with powder and shot, and by no means to forget horses.'

When these people make us a present, it is customary for them to let us know what they expect in return, and we find it convenient to gratify them; by which means our presents come dearer to us than what we get by barter. But, being sometimes pressed by occasional scarcity, we could have recourse to our friends for a supply as a present, when we could not get it by any other method. Upon the whole, therefore, this way of traffic was full as advantageous to us as to the natives. Captain Cook, in general, paid for each separate article as he received it, except in his intercourse with Otoo. His presents were so numerous, that no account was kept between him and the captain. Whatever he asked for, if it could be spared, the captain never denied him, and he always found him moderate in his demands.

Captain Cook would not have quitted Otaheite so soon as he did, if he could have prevailed, upon Omai to fix himself there. There was not even a probability of our being better supplied with provisions elsewhere, than we continued to be here, even

at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and, it was rather extraordinary, had never been once interrupted or suspended by any accident, or misunderstanding; nor had there been a theft committed worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct resulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic, which might procure them a greater share of our commodities, than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was, in some degree, settled at the first interview with their chiefs after our arrival. For captain Cook declared then to the natives, in the most decisive terms, that he would not suffer them to rob us, as they had formerly done. Omai was singularly useful in this business, being instructed by the captain to point out to them the happy consequences of their honest conduct, and the fatal mischiefs that must attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themselves; and complain of it as the worst of evils. The most valuable things that Otoo received from captain Cook were left in the captain's possession till the day before we sailed; Otoo declaring, at the same time, that they were nowhere so safe. From the acquisition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering must certainly have increased; and the chiefs are sensible of this, from their being so extremely desirous of having chests. The few that the Spaniards left amongst them are highly prized; and they were continually asking us for some. Captain Cook had one made

for O  
in le  
Lock  
secu  
ple t  
nigh  
It  
ver g  
Span  
th  
capa  
calcu  
pene  
eigh  
by th  
form  
that  
long  
May  
cons  
and  
after  
time  
T  
ved  
and,  
Goa  
with  
asho  
ed,  
have  
you  
We

for Otoo, the dimensions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three in depth. Locks and bolts are not considered as a sufficient security; but it must be large enough for two people to sleep upon, and consequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that we could never get any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they staid, and when they departed. The more we made inquiry into this matter, the more we were convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when past events happened; especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It however appeared, by the inscription upon the cross, and by the information of the most intelligent of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepeha in 1774, not long after captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here consisted of one bull, some goats, hogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal; which we were afterwards informed was a ram, and was, at this time, at Bolabola.

The hogs are large; have already much improved the breed originally found by us upon the island; and, on our late arrival, were very numerous. Goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without some. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two sorts: if they had been all hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better for the natives. Captain Cook's young ram fell a victim to one of these animals. We have already mentioned the four Spaniards that



remained on the island after their ships left it. Two of these were priests who resided the whole time in the house at Oheitepeha; but Mateema roved about continually, visiting many parts of the island. After he and his companions had staid ten months, two ships arriving at Oheitepeha, took them aboard, and sailed again in five days. Whatever design the Spaniards might have had upon this island, this hasty departure shows they have now laid it aside. They endeavoured to make the natives believe that they still intended to return; and that they would bring with them houses, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to settle on the island. Otoo, when he mentioned this to captain Cook, added, that if the Spaniards should return, they should not come to Matavai Fort, which, he said, was ours. The idea pleased him; but he did not consider that the completion of it would deprive him of his kingdom, and the people of their liberties. Though this shows how easy a settlement might be made at Otaheite, it is hoped that such a circumstance will never happen. Our occasional visits may have been of service to its inhabitants, but (considering how most European establishments are conducted among Indian nations) a permanent establishment amongst them would, probably, give them just cause to lament that our ships had ever discovered it. Indeed, a measure of this kind can hardly ever be seriously thought of, as it can neither answer the purposes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.

It has been already observed that captain Cook received a visit from one of the two natives of this island, who had been taken to Lima by the Spa-

nian  
saw  
ved  
how  
distan  
ing a  
him  
circu  
ing v  
this r  
man,  
his se  
same  
rer  
had  
home  
stowe  
to E  
into t  
himse

nians. It is somewhat remarkable that he never saw him afterwards, especially as the captain received him with uncommon civility. The captain, however, supposed that Omai had kept him at a distance from him, from motives of jealousy, he being a traveller that, in some degree, might vie with himself. Our touching at Teneriffe was a lucky circumstance for Omai, who prided himself in having visited a place belonging to Spain, as well as this man. Captain Clerke, who had seen the other man, spoke of him as a low fellow, a little out of his senses; and his own countrymen entertained the same opinion of him. In short, these two adventurers seemed to be held in little or no esteem. They had not been so fortunate, indeed, as to return home with such valuable property as had been bestowed upon Omai; whose advantages from going to England were so great, that if he should sink into the same state of insignificance, he has only himself to blame for it.

END OF VOLUME FIRST.

Cook  
of this  
e Spa-

